



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

UC-NRLF



\$B 306 141

A LATIN PRIMER

FOR BEGINNERS



THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

Education

GIFT OF

PROFESSOR

LEON J. RICHARDSON

A LATIN PRIMER

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA



NEW YORK · CINCINNATI · CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1911, BY

H. C. NUTTING.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

NUTTING. LATIN PRIMER.

W. P. 7

Education

Add'l

GIFT

John R. ...

PA2087

N98

1911

EDUC.
LIBRARY

To

MY LITTLE DAUGHTER

ELIZABETH

WHOSE EAGER INTEREST AND GLAD COÖPERATION

HAVE BEEN THE INSPIRATION OF

THIS SMALL VOLUME

PREFACE

FROM some points of view it is a misfortune that in American schools the study of Latin is usually undertaken so late that every detail of the work of the first terms must be planned with a view to reaching Caesar in a year. Encouraging signs, however, are appearing here and there, and in two or three states a movement is already on foot to carry the beginning of Latin back into the upper grades of the grammar school.

For the prosecution of this work in the grades there seems to be an almost total lack of satisfactory manuals, and it thus happened that some time ago, wishing to take up the study of Latin with one of my own children, I was led to work out for myself a plan of instruction suited to the years of my pupil. Out of that experience the present volume has grown.

In the formulation and development of the plan of the book, I have aimed particularly at four things:

- (1) To lay a broad and sure foundation of forms.
- (2) To impress through constant use a limited number of the most fundamental constructions.
- (3) To make thoroughly familiar, by continued repetition, a working vocabulary of something less than four hundred words.
- (4) To infuse a large degree of human interest into the work.

In pursuance of the last mentioned of these aims, I have admitted into the earlier Exercises several Latin words

selected rather for the interest they might excite than because of frequency of use in Caesar's *Commentaries* or Cicero's *Orations*, and, in the treatment of forms and syntax, the order of topics has been determined very largely with a view to the early development of interesting dialogue and narrative. In general method, however, the book follows thoroughly well-trying and conservative lines; and I hardly need add that, in making the above-named innovations, it is far from my purpose to render the work easy or attractive at the expense of real and substantial attainment on the part of the pupil.

The lack of general vocabularies at the end of the volume is by no means due to oversight; for it is an integral part of my plan that the student should fully master and make his own the vocabulary of each Exercise as it comes. Indeed, the number of new words in a day's lesson is so small and the amount of repetition so great that general vocabularies at the end of the book would be nothing but a hindrance to the proper use of the manual. In place of these, therefore, I substitute simply a Latin Word List. By means of this list, in case of dire need, a pupil could run down the meaning of a word; but as a matter of practice such need will seldom be found to arise.

The habit of thorough acquisition of each day's vocabulary results quickly and naturally in ability to read at sight. To foster on the part of the pupil the development of this very desirable power, there has been introduced into each Exercise, beginning with Number XXXV, one of a series of little stories told in Latin. The series is developed strictly on the gradatim plan, each successive anecdote being constructed so completely of familiar materials that footnotes are nowhere necessary. Such a programme of course subjected the writer to a very trying restraint; but

it was in this way possible to develop a body of material which provides practically ideal conditions for the practice of sight reading.

This Primer is shortly to be followed by a First Latin Reader, the two books together covering the field commonly referred to as "First Year Latin." The stories of the Reader are drawn in large part from early American history, a subject that lends itself very happily to the purpose in hand; for the tales of those stirring days of war and adventure are replete with human interest, while at the same time they afford the most admirable opportunity for the introduction of the vocabulary and syntax of Latin historical narrative. The Reader continues with somewhat greater freedom the gradatim plan begun in the Primer, and the pupil who first went over the ground covered by the two books was able to complete even the simplified Caesar contained in the Reader without knowing what it is to "prepare" an English translation; for from the very start translation "at sight" had established itself as the norm in the most delightful and natural manner possible. On account of the narrow limitations of syntax and vocabulary, the anecdotes of the Primer are largely fanciful; but in the Reader it is my aim to make the narrative historical.

In putting the material of this volume into final form, I have been much helped by the suggestions of Dr. R. Arrowsmith. I would also here express my thanks for similar assistance received from Miss Margaret Webb and Miss Clara L. Smith, both of whom have used my manuscript as a basis for the work of the newly organized seventh grade Latin classes in the Berkeley schools.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA,

TO THE TEACHER

IN work of the grade for which this Primer is designed much must be left to the discretion of the instructor. I venture, however, to add a word of suggestion or advice on several topics:

1. **Oral Work.** In connection with the earlier Exercises particularly, it is eminently desirable that much time be spent in oral work. The printed sentences of the Exercises are practically forced into the form which they have taken by the fact that, in addition to illustrating as fully as possible the new points of the lesson of the day, they must also include adequate review material. Supplementary work, oral or otherwise, would naturally follow freer lines. One teacher succeeded in stirring the interest of an immature class by putting together, almost from the very start, short connected sentences, e.g. *Agricola in āreā est. Corbulam tenet. In corbulā ūvās et rosās habet*; and my own experience has shown that, as soon as the limitations of vocabulary and syntax will permit, it is both profitable and popular to construct out of familiar materials short stories to be translated at hearing. As a help to those who may wish to do somewhat extensive work along *viva voce* lines, a short list of colloquial phrases has been added in Appendix II. All such work, of course, must be strictly supplementary. Nothing can with safety be substituted for the comprehensive test of the printed sentences.

2. **Pronunciation.** In the belief that pronunciation is best learned by youthful beginners directly from the teacher, general treatment of this subject has been rele-

gated to Appendix I. Teachers will use their own discretion as to the use of the material there provided.

3. **Paradigms.** It has seemed best to prefix to the paradigms all of the customary headings, although it is not expected or desired that equal attention be given at the outset to all such introductory phrases; for example, of the various headings of the paradigm of Exercise II, the phrase "Present Tense" is clearly of greatest importance for the work of that particular lesson. As different paradigms are taken up, the teacher should emphasize the heading or headings to which he feels that his class can with profit give attention.

In constructing the paradigms I have purposely refrained from attempting to define the different cases, moods, etc., of the words used as models. As regards the verb, it is really impossible to frame brief and adequate definitions for the forms as they stand in the paradigm; and with respect to the noun, too, the question of definition is not without complications. For example, in this manual the ablative is first put to actual use in connection with the prepositions *in* and *sub* to express "place where," and it would therefore seem wholly illogical to inform the student in the paradigm of Exercise I that the ablative case signifies "with," "by," etc. Personally, I find that it works well to postpone definition until forms are put to actual use; but any teacher who prefers the other plan can of course supply at once for the use of the class those definitions which seem to him best to cover the ground.

4. **The Verb.** The great wealth of Latin verb forms makes it ultimately impossible to maintain an adequate review through the medium of the sentences of the Exercises merely. As a supplementary measure it has been

found helpful to write out the forms on small cards, one on each card. These drawn out at random furnish an excellent memory test, the pupil's interest being held meanwhile by the likeness to a game.

5. Assignment of Work. The rate of progress through the book must of course be determined by the aptitude of the class. In many cases it will be found necessary to spend at least two periods upon single Exercises, and that too with frequently interspersed reviews.

In conclusion, to those who now for the first time are about to join in the pleasant work of introducing young beginners to the study of Latin, let me say by way of reminder that it is very easy for an adult to underestimate the difficulties under which a seventh or eighth grade pupil is laboring. If such a student at the outset is a little bewildered by his new environment and makes a number of very crude mistakes, this fact should not be counted either surprising or discouraging. Three things only are necessary: Have patience; Keep good models before the pupil's eye and ear; Repeat often.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introductory Notes and Definitions	15
EXERCISE	
I. First or $\bar{A}$ -Declension	17
II. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Present Indicative Active. Subject and Direct Object. Agreement of the Verb	19
III. Irregular Verb: <i>Sum</i> , Present Indicative	22
IV. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	24
V. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	26
VI. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active	27
VII. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	30
VIII. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	31
IX. Second or O-Declension, Masculine. Possessive Genitive	32
X. Second or O-Declension, Masculine (continued). Place into Which	34
XI. Second or O-Declension, Neuter	36
XII. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson. Place to Which	39
XIII. Vocative Case	41
XIV. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Adjectives. Predicate Adjectives and Nouns	44
XV. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Future Indicative Active	46
XVI. Irregular Verb: <i>Sum</i> , Future Indicative	48
XVII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (continued)	50
XVIII. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Present Subjunctive Active. Dative of the Indirect Object	53

EXERCISE	PAGE
XIX. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Imperfect Subjunctive Active. <i>Ut</i> -Clauses of Purpose. Sequence in Purpose Clauses	55
XX. Personal Pronouns: <i>Ego, Tu</i>	58
XXI. Personal Pronouns (continued). Possessive Adjectives	60
XXII. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Pluperfect Subjunctive Active. <i>Cum</i> -Circumstantial	62
XXIII. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	65
XXIV. Irregular Verb: <i>Sum</i> , Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive	66
XXV. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Pluperfect Indicative Active	68
XXVI. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	70
XXVII. Ablative of Means	72
XXVIII. Personal Pronoun: <i>Is, ea, id</i>	74
XXIX. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active	77
XXX. Irregular Verb: <i>Sum</i> , Imperfect Indicative. <i>Domum</i>	79
XXXI. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Present Infinitive Active. Complementary Infinitive	81
XXXII. Irregular Verb: <i>Sum</i> , Present Subjunctive	83
XXXIII. Second or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Future Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive, Active	85
XXXIV. Synopsis of the Verb	87
XXXV. Principal Parts of the Verb. Use of <i>-ne</i>	89
XXXVI. First or $\bar{A}$ -Conjugation, Active Voice	92
XXXVII. Third Declension, Consonant Stems	94
XXXVIII. Cardinal Numerals: <i>Duo, Trēs</i>	96
XXXIX. Irregular Verb: <i>Eō</i> . Hortatory Subjunctive	98
XL. Irregular Verb: <i>Possum</i>	101
XLI. Vocabulary. Reading Lesson	103
XLII. Third Declension, I-Stems	105
XLIII. Third or $\bar{E}$ -Conjugation, Active Voice	107

EXERCISE	PAGE
XLIV. Irregular Verb: <i>Ferō</i> , Active Voice	116
XLV. Accusative of Extent	112
XLVI. Irregular Verb: <i>Volō</i> . Accusative of Extent (continued)	115
XLVII. Irregular Verbs: <i>Mālō</i> , <i>Nolō</i> . Cardinal Numerals (continued)	117
XLVIII. Third or <i>Ē</i> -Conjugation (verbs in <i>-iō</i>), Active Voice .	119
XLIX. Relative Pronoun. Agreement of Relative	122
L. Fourth or <i>Ī</i> -Conjugation, Active Voice	124
LI. Imperative (all conjugations), Present Active. Prohi- bition	126
LII. Adjectives of the Third Declension, I-Stems . . .	129
LIII. Fourth or U-Declension. Imperfect of Customary Past Action	131
LIV. Perfect Tenses (all conjugations), Passive Voice .	134
LV. <i>Īdem</i> , <i>Ipse</i> . Use of Neuter Pronouns	137
LVI. First or <i>Ā</i> -Conjugation, Passive Voice. Ablative of Agency	140
LVII. <i>Quidam</i>	144
LVIII. Second or <i>Ē</i> -Conjugation, Passive Voice. Complemen- tary Infinitive (continued)	146
LIX. Fifth or <i>Ē</i> -Declension. Cardinal Numerals (contin- ued). Declension of <i>Ūnus</i> . <i>Is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i> (as adjec- tive)	149
LX. Third or <i>Ē</i> -Conjugation, Passive Voice. <i>Quis</i> . . .	152
LXI. Reflexive Pronoun; <i>sui</i> . <i>Vt.</i> Indirect Discourse .	155
LXII. Irregular Verb: <i>Ferō</i> , Passive Voice. Use of the Rel- ative Pronoun in place of a Demonstrative . . .	158
LXIII. Third or <i>Ē</i> -Conjugation (verbs in <i>-iō</i>), Passive Voice. Partial I-Stems	162
LXIV. Irregular Verb: <i>Fiō</i> . Perfect Passive Participle (all conjugations). Ablative Absolute	164
LXV. Comparison of Adjectives. Irregular Comparison. Declension of the Comparative	169

EXERCISE	PAGE
LXVI. Fourth or I-Conjugation, Passive Voice. Comparison of Adverbs	172
LXVII. Present Participle (all conjugations). Declension of the Present Participle	176
LXVIII. <i>Deus, Domus</i> . Ordinal Numerals. <i>Nē</i> -Clauses of Purpose	179
LXIX. Deponent Verbs	181
LXX. <i>Hic, Ille</i>	183
LXXI. <i>Aliquis (Aliquis), Iste</i>	186
LXXII. The Gerundive (all conjugations). Ordinal Numerals (continued)	188
Summary of Forms	192
Word List	223
Appendix I. The Pronunciation of Latin	229
Appendix II. Colloquial Phrases	232
Index	234

INTRODUCTORY NOTES AND DEFINITIONS

INFLECTION

LATIN nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs are inflected, *i.e.* undergo changes of form which show their relation to other words in a sentence. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called Declension, and the inflection of verbs is known as Conjugation.

DECLENSION

In speaking of the different forms which nouns, pronouns, and adjectives may take, the terms Case, Gender, and Number are used.

Case. The three cases of English can be seen to best advantage in the pronoun; for example, "he" (Nominative Case), "his" (Possessive Case), and "him" (Objective Case). Latin has several additional cases, which correspond in meaning to the English objective case with a preposition; thus, "to a sailor," "for a sailor," "with a sword," etc., could all be translated into Latin without the help of prepositions.

Gender. In English we have the very simple gender rule that the names of males are Masculine, the names of females are Feminine, and the names of things are Neuter. In Latin, too, these three genders are found, but the rule is more complicated; for in Latin the names of *things* may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter.

Number. In the English phrases "the *ship*" and "the *ships*," the difference between the nouns is one of number; that is, "ship" refers to a *single* vessel, and "ships" to *more than one* vessel. To mark this difference we use the terms Singular Number ("ship") and Plural Number ("ships"). These terms are used in just the same way of Latin words.

CONJUGATION

In connection with the inflection of the verb, the following terms are used: Mood, Number (already defined), Person, Tense, and Voice.

Mood. The moods of a verb are its ways of expressing action. Both English and Latin verbs have three moods; namely, Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative. A verb in the Indicative Mood generally *states* that a thing *is so*; for example, "The boys *are running*." In the Imperative Mood a verb *commands* something *to be done*, as "Run, boys." The uses of the Subjunctive Mood are various.

Person. In English and Latin there are three persons. The First Person refers to the speaker ("I," "we"), the Second Person refers to the person spoken to ("you"), and the Third Person refers to the person or thing spoken of ("he," "she," "it," "they").

Tense. An English or Latin verb by its tense indicates the *time* of an action; as, "I *see*" (Present Tense), "I *shall see*" (Future Tense), etc.

Voice. In the sentence "John ran," the verb tells what John *did*; but in "John was caught," the verb tells what *was done* to John. To mark this difference the terms Active Voice ("ran") and Passive Voice ("was caught") are used of both English and Latin verbs.

EXERCISE I

THE FIRST OR A-DECLENSION¹

mēnsa, table

CASE	SINGULAR NUMBER	PLURAL NUMBER
Nominative	mēnsa	mēnsae
Genitive	mēnsae	mēnsārum
Dative	mēnsae	mēnsis
Accusative	mēnsam	mēnsās
Ablative	mēnsā	mēnsis

Listen carefully while the teacher pronounces these Latin words. Note especially that the accent nowhere falls upon the last syllable.

Commit to memory the singular and plural of **mēnsa**, connecting each form with the name of its case. The meaning and uses of these cases will be taken up later.

Gender.—All nouns of the First Declension are feminine, excepting the few names of males.

VOCABULARY

córbula, -ae, F., basket.

píla, -ae, F., ball.

naúta, -ae, M., sailor.

rósa, -ae, F., rose.

REMARK 1. In the above vocabulary the -ae following each noun is the ending of the genitive singular; and F. and M. are abbreviations for "Feminine" and "Masculine." Each noun should be memorized in the following way: "**Córbula, córbulae, Feminine, basket.**"

¹ For the meaning of "Declension" and other grammatical terms here used, see Introductory Notes and Definitions, pages 15 and 16.



PILAE

Among the Greeks and Romans ball playing, except for small children, was for the most part a means of exercise rather than a mere game. The balls used were of various sizes, some being as large as a football or "medicine" ball. Bats and racquets were not then in use. The players either threw the ball or struck it about with the hand or arm.



CORBULA

The Romans used baskets of many shapes and sizes. Some were very stout and strong; for example, those in which soldiers carried away on their shoulders the earth dug out in making fortifications. The particular kind of basket shown in the picture was used on the farm for fruit picking and other purposes.

REMARK 2. In headings and vocabularies it is convenient to render *mēnsa* by "table," *corbula* by "basket," etc. But, when actually used in a sentence, *mēnsa*, for example, would be apt to mean "*the* table," or "*a* table." In Latin there is nothing corresponding to the English articles "a," "an," and "the."

I. Name the case and number of the following forms:
pilae, corbulā, rosis, nautārum, mēnsās, pilam, corbula.

II. Give:

The genitive plural of *rosa*; the ablative singular of *pila*; the dative plural of *mēnsa*; the accusative singular of *nauta*; the nominative plural of *corbula*; the accusative plural of *rosa*.

EXERCISE II

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION¹

hābeō, I have

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT TENSE

PERSON	SINGULAR NUMBER	PLURAL NUMBER
1st person	<i>hābeō</i>	<i>habēmus</i>
2d person	<i>hābēs</i>	<i>habētis</i>
3d person	<i>hābet</i>	<i>hābent</i>

REMARK. In English we say "*I have*," "*you have*," "*he (she, it) has*," "*we have*," etc., depending largely on the pronouns to show the person and number of the verb; but in Latin a verb has special endings which render unnecessary the use of pronouns for this purpose. Note above how the endings of *habeō* change for each person and number.

¹ For the meaning of the grammatical terms here used, see Introductory Notes and Definitions, pages 15 and 16.

With **habeō** as a model, give the corresponding forms of **teneō**, *I hold, I am holding*.

VOCABULARY

hérba, -ae, F., *grass*.

puélla, -ae, F., *girl*.

púpa, -ae, F., *doll*.

vía, -ae, F., *street, road*.

et, conjunction, *and*.

in, preposition, used with the ablative case, *in, on*,

at.

est, *is, there is*.

REMARK. Note particularly the second meaning of **est**. In Latin there is nothing corresponding to "there" in such phrases as "there is," "there are," etc.

MODEL SENTENCES

Nauta corbulam tenet, A sailor is holding the basket.

Nautae corbulam habent, The sailors have a basket.

RULE I. *With an active verb, the nominative is the case of the ^{subject} doer, and the accusative is the case of the thing ^{object} directly affected by the verb action.*

Thus, in the first of the model sentences above, **Nauta** (nominative) is the doer, and **corbulam** (accusative) is the thing directly affected by the verb action; in other words, **Nauta** is the Subject of the verb, and **corbulam** is its Direct Object.

RULE II. *When the Subject of the verb is plural (as in the second of the model sentences), the verb likewise must be plural.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

1. Puella pūpam et rosās tenet.
2. In corbulā pilās habētis.
3. Pūpae mēnsās habent.
4. Corbulās tenēmus.
5. In mēnsā est pila.



VIA

The road here shown is the famous Appian Way (*Via Appia*), built more than two thousand years ago, and still lined with the ruins of ancient monuments. It was along this road that St. Paul journeyed to Rome.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. The sailor has a doll. 2. The girls are-holding roses. 3. We have a doll in the basket. 4. There is grass in the street. 5. On the table you have roses.

EXERCISE III

IRREGULAR VERB

sum, I am

PRESENT TENSE		INDICATIVE MOOD	
PERSON	SINGULAR NUMBER	PLURAL NUMBER	
1st person	sum	súmus	
2d person	es	éstis	
3d person	est	sunt	

VOCABULARY

área, -ae, F., yard.

scálae, -árum, F., stairs.

símia, -ae, F., monkey.

láteō, I hide, I am hiding.

timeō, I am afraid (of), I fear.

sub, preposition, used with the ablative case, under.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

1. Puellae símiam timent. 2. Pila in āreā sub mēnsā est. 3. Nautam símia tenet. 4. Nautae et símiae in viā sunt. 5. Pūpae rosās in corbulis habent. 6. Símiae sub mēnsā latent; nautam timent.

II. Translate into Latin :

1. Sailors are in the yard. 2. The girl is under the stairs; she is-afraid-of the sailors. 3. The monkeys have



PŪPA

This little doll is made of ivory, and its arms and legs are movable. Roman girls had also dolls made of rags, wood, wax, or terra cotta. Some dolls were much more elaborate than the one in the picture.



SĪMIA

Above is shown a strolling street artist, with his monkey and a dog that has been taught to climb a ladder. Such artists traveled around from place to place, picking up a living in much the same manner as the hand-organ man of to-day.

baskets. 4. You are-hiding under the table. 5. A monkey is-holding the doll. 6. The dolls are-hiding in the grass.

EXERCISE IV

VOCABULARY

āqua, -ae, F., *water*.

bāca, -ae, F., *berry*.

sēlla, -ae, F., *chair*.

sōlea, -ae, F., *sandal*.

videō, *I see*.

ūbi? *adverb, where?*

pīlā lūdāmus, *let's play ball*.

inquit, *he (she) said, replied, asked, etc.*

NOTE. The names of persons are declined just as any other nouns; for example, Iūlia (whence our "Julia") follows the declension of mēnsa. Mārcus (the nominative of a boy's name) is declined in a way soon to be described.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Mārcus et Iūlia simiam vident. 2. Corbulam et bācās habētis. 3. In āreā bācās videō. 4. Nauta soleās in corbulā habet.

B. 1. "Ubi sunt pūpae?" inquit Iūlia. "Pūpae in herbā latent," inquit Mārcus. 2. "Pīlā lūdāmus," inquit Mārcus. "Ubi est pila?" inquit Iūlia. "Pila sub mēnsā est," inquit Mārcus.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The monkey is-afraid-of the water. 2. The sandals are on the chair. 3. The doll has sandals and a chair and a table. 4. The monkeys are-holding grass.

B. 1. "Where are the berries?" said Julia. "The berries are in a basket under the stairs," replied Marcus.



SELLA

The chairs of the Romans for the most part lacked both back and arms. Seats of honor, as in the picture above, were sometimes provided with a foot-rest. High officials commonly occupied a sort of camp-chair, the legs of which were made of ivory.



SOLEAE

As Italy is a warm country, the Romans often went barefooted when in their own homes. For outdoor wear they preferred sandals of which the "upper" consisted merely of a strap or two. The *soleae* above shown were of the kind used in the army.

EXERCISE VI

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION

habeō

INDICATIVE MOOD

ACTIVE VOICE

PERFECT TENSE

PERSON	SINGULAR NUMBER	PLURAL NUMBER
1st person	hābui	habuimus
2d person	habuisti	habuistis
3d person	hābuit	habuerunt

Inflect in the same way the perfect tense of *doceō* (*dōcui*), *iaceō* (*iācui*), *lateō* (*lātui*), *sedeō* (*sēdi*), *teneō* (*tēnui*), *timeō* (*timui*), *videō* (*vīdi*); so also of *sum* (*fui*). Note that in *sēdi* and *vīdi* there is no *u* before the final *i*. Consequently the perfect of *sedeō*, for example, proceeds: *sēdi*, *sēdisti*, *sēdit*, etc.

NOTE. The perfect is the past tense of the indicative mood most used in Latin. It has two distinct meanings. For example, *vīdi* means either "I saw" or "I have seen"; *fui*, "I was" or "I have been"; etc.

REMARK. Special attention must be given verbs like *sēdi*; for, since the present *sedeō* means "I am sitting" as well as "I sit," it is very easy to make the mistake of translating *sēdi* by "I was sitting." The correct renderings of *sēdi* are indicated above, namely, "I sat" and "I have sat" ("I have been sitting"). Give also the proper translations of *dōcui*, *iācui*, *lātui*, and *tēnui*. By an apparent exception to the rule, *timui* may be correctly rendered by "I was afraid (of)."

VOCABULARY

agricola, -ae, M., *farmer*. nunc, adverb, *now*.
 Cláudia, -ae, F., a girl's name. quid? *what?*
 cýmba, -ae, F., *boat, skiff*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

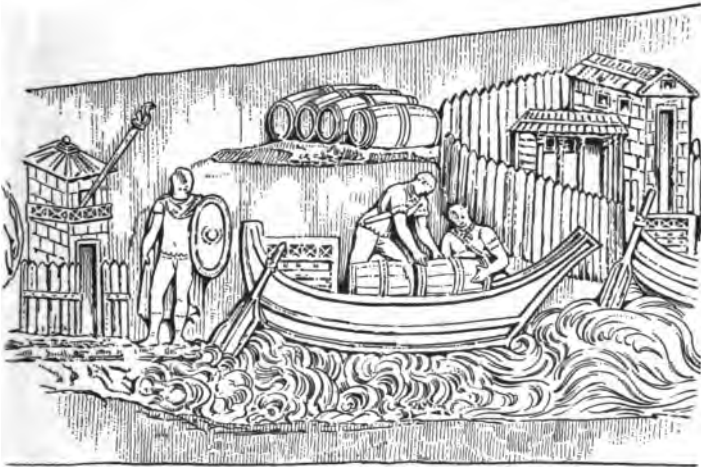
A. 1. Ubi latuistis? Ubi nunc Mārcus latet? 2. Agricola in cymbā cum nautis fuērunt. 3. In umbrā sēdimus et puellās docuimus.

B. 1. "Quid in āreā vīdisti?" inquit Mārcus. "Bācās et rosās in āreā vīdī," inquit Claudia. 2. "Ubi sunt sīmiae?" inquit agricola. "Sub sellis latuērunt," inquit Mārcus; "nautam timent." 3. "Quid in corbulā habuit nauta?" inquit Claudia. "Nauta pūpās in corbulā habuit," inquit Iūlia.

II. Translate into Latin

A. 1. We have been sitting in the yard. 2. There were roses and berries in the baskets. 3. What were-you-afraid-of? 4. I saw farmers and sailors in the boat. 5. The doll lay under the table.

B. 1. "Where am I now?" asked Marcus. "You are under the stairs," said Julia. "You are-sitting on a chair and holding a doll." 2. "Where were you?" asked the sailor. "I was in the yard with Claudia," replied Marcus. 3. "Let's play ball," said Julia. "The ball is-lying under the chair in the grass."

**CYMBAE**

In the illustrations are shown two *cymbae* as represented by ancient artists. In the first picture a passenger is stepping on board to be ferried over a river, and in the other some soldiers are loading casks into a boat.

EXERCISE VII

VOCABULARY

cóncha, -ae, F., *shell*.

cūr? adverb, *why*?

harēna, -ae, F., *sand, beach*.

inquiunt, *they said, replied,*

quía, conjunction, *because*.

asked, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Quid in harēnā est? 2. Nautās nunc agricolae timent. 3. Ubi fuērunt conchae? 4. Puella simiam docuit. 5. Cūr sub mēnsā latuisti?

B. 1. "Cūr in umbrā iacēs?" inquit Mārcus. "Pilā lūdāmus." 2. "Quid in harēnā vidērunt puellae?" inquit Iūlia. "Puellae in harēnā conchās vidērunt," inquit Mārcus. 3. "Ubi latuistis?" inquit Claudia. "Sub mēnsā latuimus," inquiunt puellae, "quia agricolās et nautās timēmus."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. What do the girls see in the water? 2. The sailors have been lying in the boat, and Marcus has been on the beach with the monkey. 3. Why do we sit in the sand? In the yard there are shade and water. 4. What did the sailors have in the boat?

B. 1. "Where did you see the ball?" asked Marcus. "We saw the ball on the beach," replied the girls. 2. "Why have you been sitting in the yard?" said the farmer. "I sat in the yard, because in the shade there are chairs," answered Marcus. 3. "What are the dolls now holding?" asked Claudia. "They have berries and shells," said Julia.

EXERCISE VIII

VOCABULARY

<i>cāvea</i> , -ae, F., <i>cage</i> .	<i>itaque</i> , conjunction, <i>and so</i> .
<i>cūnae</i> , -ārum, F., <i>cradle</i> .	<i>sed</i> , conjunction, <i>but</i> .
<i>Mārcella</i> , -ae, F., a girl's name.	<i>térreō</i> , <i>I frighten, I am frightening</i> , etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. In āreā bācās vidimus; sed nunc in harēnā conchās vidēmus. 2. Cūr nautam terruistis? 3. Itaque in cūnīs pūpae iacent. 4. Quid in cymbā habent agricolae?

B. 1. "Cūr sīmiam tenētis?" inquit Mārcus. "Sīmiam tenēmus," inquiunt puellae, "quia pūpās terret." 2. "Ubi est cavea?" inquit Iūlia. "Cavea in harēnā fuit," inquit Claudia; "sed nunc in āreā est." 3. "Quid videt Iūlia?" inquit Mārcella. "Iūlia nautās et agricolās videt," inquit Mārcus. "Caveam habent. Sīmia caveam timet."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. What do you see in the shade? 2. But the doll now has sandals and a cradle. 3. Where are the baskets? 4. The monkeys are in the cage, because they frightened the girls.

B. 1. "Where have the sailors been sitting?" asked Marcus. "They saw berries in the yard," replied the girls, "and so they have been sitting in the grass with the farmer." 2. "Why is the monkey hiding in the water?" said Marcella. "The monkey was under the cradles," replied Marcus; "and so he is now in the water, because he is afraid of Julia."

EXERCISE IX

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

hórtus, m., garden

CASE	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	hórtus	hórti
Genitive	hórti	hortórum
Dative	hórtō	hórtis
Accusative	hórtum	hórtōs
Ablative	hórtō	hórtis

VOCABULARY

équus, -i, m., horse.**Quíntus, -i, m., a boy's name.****Márcus, -i, m., a boy's name. caúda, -ae, f., tail.**

RULE. *The genitive is the case of the person or thing to which something belongs; for example, Márci cymba, Marcus' boat; puellae equus, the girl's horse; etc.*

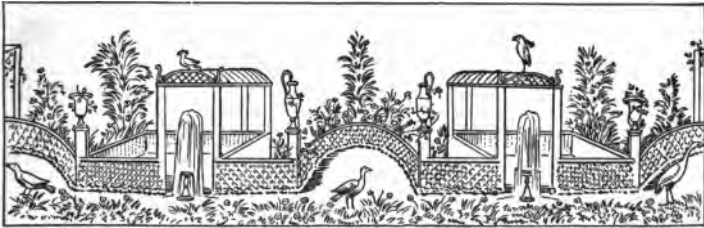
In this use the genitive corresponds to the Possessive Case in English.

REMARK. In a Latin sentence it is not always possible instantly to recognize a genitive, since sometimes other cases are like it in form. Thus equi (so far as form is concerned) might be either genitive singular or nominative plural; and nautae might be either genitive or dative singular or nominative plural. When such forms are used, we have to depend on the other words of the Latin sentence to make clear which case is meant.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Márci símia nunc in caveā est. 2. Sed in pūpārū cūnis sunt conchae et harēna. 3. Cūr equi in hortō iacent? 4. Itaque equi caudam símia tenuit.



HORTUS

Rich Romans took much pride in well-kept pleasure gardens. In these there were level walks with fountains here and there, flowers were carefully cultivated, and the trees and shrubs were often cut into ornamental shapes. The picture above shown was found painted on a wall in the ruins of Pompeii. There were, of course, plenty of vegetable gardens also in Italy, but painters seem to have taken little interest in them. The lower picture is from Herculaneum.



HORTUS

B. 1. "Quid videt Quīnti equus?" inquit Mārcus. "Equus herbam et aquam videt," inquit Mārcella. 2. "Cūr agricolae equōs tenent?" inquirunt puellae. "Equōs tenent," inquit Quīntus, "quia in viā nautae cum simiis fuērunt. Equi nautārum simiās timuērunt." 3. "Ubi sēdistis?" inquit Mārcus. "In pūpārum sellis sēdimus," inquirunt puellae.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. And so the doll's table and chairs were under the stairs. 2. There is now a basket in the doll's cradle. 3. Why did they frighten the farmer's horses? 4. What did the sailor's monkey see? 5. The girls hid in the yard and garden.

B. 1. "Let's play ball with Marcus' monkey," said Marcella. "Where is the ball?" "Marcus' ball was on the doll's chair," answered Claudia; "now it is under the table." 2. "Why did Quintus sit in the sailors' boat?" asked Julia. "Quintus sat in the boat, because there have been horses on the beach," said Claudia; "but Marcus and the girls sat in the garden in the shade."

EXERCISE X

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION (continued)

	<i>pūer, m., boy</i>		<i>āger, m., field</i>	
CASE	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	pūer	pūeri	āger	āgri
Genitive	pūeri	puerōrum	āgri	agrōrum
Dative	pūerō	pūeris	āgrō	āgris
Accusative	pūerum	pūerōs	āgrum	āgrōs
Ablative	pūerō	pūeris	āgrō	āgris

VOCABULARY

cucúrri, *I ran, I have run.* **vēni**, *I came, I have come.*
ē, ex, preposition, used with **in**, preposition, used with
the ablative case, (*out*) the accusative case, *into*.
from, out of.

REMARK 1. The verbs from which come the perfects **cucurri** and **vēni** do not belong to the second conjugation ; but the inflection of the perfect tense of all conjugations is identical. With **habuī**, therefore, as a model, inflect the perfects **cucurri** and **vēni**.

REMARK 2. Both forms of the preposition **ē, ex** have the same meaning. The second form is to be used when the following ablative begins with a vowel or **h**.

REMARK 3. Contrast the meaning of **in** and the ablative with that of **in** and the accusative. The former indicates Place Where, the latter Place into Which. Translate the following phrases : **in cymbā**, *sub cymbā*, **ē cymbā**, *in cymbam*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. **Ex āreā cucurrimus.** 2. **Puer in agricolae hortum vēnit.** 3. **Cūr cucurristi ē viā in āream?** 4. **Itaque simia cum Iūliae pūpā in caveam cucurrit.**

B. 1. "**Puellae in nautārum cymbis sedent,**" inquit **Mārcus**; "**cum pueris pilā lūdāmus.**" "**Ubi sunt pueri?**" inquit **Quīntus**. "**Puerī ex hortō in āream cucurrerunt,**" inquit **Mārcus**; "**nunc in umbrā latent.**" 2. "**Cūr nautae equus ex agrō in hortum cucurrit?**" inquit **puellae**. "**Simia equum terruit,**" inquit **Mārcus**; "**sed nauta ē cymbā vēnit, et equus nunc in āreā, simia in caveā est.**"

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. And so you ran from the water into the yard and hid under the dolls' table. 2. Why did they come

from the yard into the farmer's fields? 3. What is Claudia's doll holding? 4. Where is Marcus' ball? Why was it under the chair?

B. 1. "Where did you see the farmers' horses?" asked Quintus. "They were in the garden," replied the girls, "but now they have run into the water." 2. "Why did the girl's monkey run from the boat?" said Marcella. "It has run from the boat," replied Marcus, "because the farmers came and sat in the sand."

EXERCISE XI

THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION (continued)

mālum, N., *apple*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	mālum	māla
Genitive	māli	mālōrum
Dative	mālō	mālīs
Accusative	mālum	māla
Ablative	mālō	mālīs

REMARK. The accusative of neuter words is always the same as the nominative. Note how this fact is illustrated by the singular and plural of **mālum**.

Gender. The second declension is made up almost wholly of masculine and neuter nouns. Regular masculines end in **-us** or **-er**, and the neuters end in **-um**. The few feminines belonging to this declension have the termination **-us**.

VOCABULARY

tabernāculum, -i, N., <i>tent.</i>	ii, <i>I went, I have gone.</i>
taberna, -ae, F., <i>store, shop.</i>	miſi, <i>I sent, I have sent.</i>



TABERNA

Roman shops were often hardly more than booths. But many dwelling houses were so built that the ground floor on the street side could be let out to tradesmen. Each such store consisted usually of a single room shut off completely from the rest of the building, the merchant doing his business there during the day, but having his residence elsewhere. At night the shops were closed by putting up wooden shutters in front.

REMARK. The perfect *ii* is a shorter form for *ivi*. Generally the singular and plural of the second person are further shortened to *isti* and *istis*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque agricola puerōs cum equīs in agrōs mīsīt. 2. Cūr in tabernam istis? Cūr in sellis sedētis? 3. Puellās ex hortō in āream mīsistī. 4. Cūr puer pūpās tenuit?

B. 1. "Quid in tabernāculō vidistis?" inquit Quīntus. "Pūpārū cūnās et sīmiae caveam in tabernāculō vidimus," inquit puerī. 2. "Cūr puerī ē cymbā in hortum iērunt?" inquit Mārcus. "Puerōs in hortum mīsī," inquit nauta; "nunc māla in corbulā habent." 3. "Ubi latuit Iūlia?" inquit Mārcus. "Iūlia in tabernāculum cucurrit," inquit puellae; "sed nunc in pūpae cūnīs latet."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The farmer went from the tent, and sent the boys into the sailors' boat. 2. In the farmer's garden are berries and roses; on the beach there are shells. 3. And so the farmers' horses came from the field and ran into the garden.

B. 1. "Where are the monkeys?" asked Julia. "The monkeys went with the boys into the tent," replied Marcus; "but now they are on the street." 2. "Why did you come from the shade into the road?" said Claudia. "I came into the road because I am afraid of the farmer's horse," answered Marcella. "But," said Quintus, "the farmer has come from the store with the boys and sent the horse into the fields."

EXERCISE XII

VOCABULARY

lūdus, -ī, m., *school*.liber, -brī, m., *book*.magister, -trī, m., *teacher*.subsellium, -ī, n., *bench*.tum, adverb, *then*.ad, preposition, used with
the accusative case, *to*.dūxi, *I brought, I have
brought; I led, I have led*.poenās dedi, *I was punished,
I have been punished*.

REMARK 1. Contrast the meaning of *in* and the accusative with that of *ad* and the accusative, the former indicating Place *into* Which, the latter Place *to* Which.

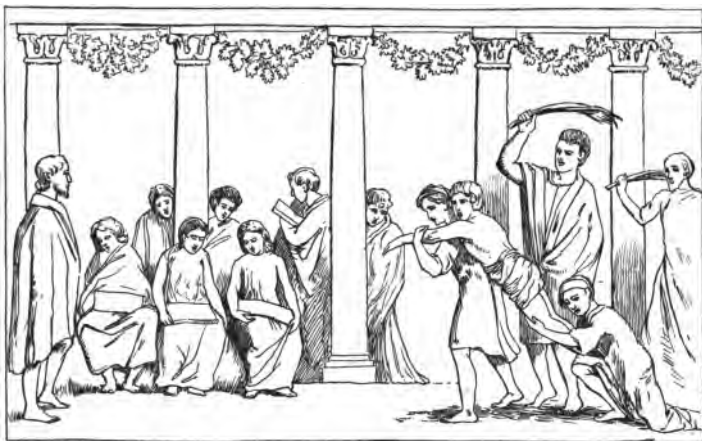
REMARK 2. The phrase *poenās dedi* means literally "I paid the penalty," hence "I was punished." The perfect *dedi* is to be conjugated as any other perfect, *poenās* remaining unchanged; *e.g.* *poenās dedi, poenās dedisti, poenās dedit*, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

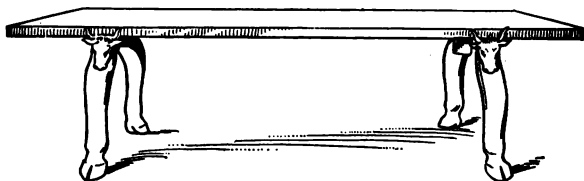
A. 1. Puerī et puellae ex agrīs in lūdum iērunt.
2. Itaque nunc in subselliis sedent. 3. Magister ē tabernā vēnit; bācās et mālā in corbulis habet. 4. Iūliae librī in tabernāculō sunt.

B. 1. "Ubi est Mārcus?" inquit Claudia. "Agricola Mārcum in tabernam mīsīt," inquit Iūlia. 2. "Quid in lūdō vidisti?" inquit Mārcella. "Mārcus et Quintus sīmiam in lūdum dūxērunt," inquit Iūlia. "Sīmia sub subselliis latuit et magistrum terruit. Tum puerī poenās dedērunt."
3. "Cūr in tabernāculum cucurristis? cūr sub mēnsā latētis?" inquit Quīntus. "Latēmus," inquiunt puellae, "quia in āreā equum vidimus."



PUER POENĀS DEDIT

In this illustration school seems to be in session in an open colonnade, as was the custom among the Greeks. Three boys may be seen sitting on *sellae*, holding spread out upon their laps rolls of manuscript from which they are studying. Their less fortunate companion in front is being severely whipped.



SUBSELLIUM

Any bench upon legs and without a back was called *subsellium*. The particular bench shown above was found in the public baths of Pompeii. Note the ornamental carvings upon the legs.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Marcus' books lie on the bench. 2. And so the teacher then brought the boys and girls from the garden into the street. 3. You were punished at school. 4. What did you have in the basket?

B. 1. "The sailor's monkey hid in the grass and frightened the teacher's horse," said the girls. "Then he was punished." 2. "Let's play ball in the school," said Marcus. "Where is the teacher?" asked Quintus. "The teacher is in the yard," answered Marcus. "He led the horse to water," said Claudia; "then he came into the yard with (his) books, and is now lying on the bench."

EXERCISE XIII

The vocative case is like the nom. case, except in words of the second declension ending in -us which have a special form.

In addition to the five cases already treated, words of the second declension ending in -us have also a special vocative singular, e.g. **Mārce**, **Quinte**, etc. Everywhere else, in all declensions, the nominative is made to do service as a vocative.

MODEL SENTENCES

Ubi sunt libri, Mārce? Where are the books, Marcus?

Quid habēs, Iūlia? What have you, Julia?

Cūr ē cymbā, puellae, cucurristis? Why did you run from the boat, girls?

RULE. *The vocative case is used in addressing a person by name or title.*

REMARK. In an English sentence the vocative often stands first, but in Latin it seldom has this position. In a short sentence it is apt to stand last.

VOCABULARY

stilus, -i, m., *pen.*tergum, -i, n., *back.*umerus, -i, m., *shoulder.*capsa, -ae, f., *school bag.*tabula, -ae, f., *tablet.*vēxi, *I carried, I have carried.*

REMARK. The verb of which vēxi is the perfect is seldom applied to men. It is commonly used of carrying by horses, ships, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Quid in capsā habēs, Quīnte? 2. In capsā librōs et tabulās habeo. 3. Ubi est sīmia, Claudia? 4. Sīmia in nautae umerō sedet; mālum habet. 5. Quid in harēnā vīdistis, puellae? 6. Corbulās et conchās vīdimus.

B. 1. "Cūr in aquam cucurrit equus?" inquit puellae. "In aquam equus cucurrit," inquit Mārcus, "quia sīmia in tergō est." 2. "Ubi fuit Quīntī equus, Claudia?" inquit Mārcella. "Equus magistrum ad lūdum vēxit," inquit Claudia. "Tum vēnit agricola, et equum in agrōs dūxit." 3. "Cūr cum tabulā et stilō, Quīnte, sub mēnsā sēdistī?" inquit Mārcus. "Mārcellam et Claudiam terruī," inquit Quīntus; "itaque poenās dedī."

II. Translate into Latin :

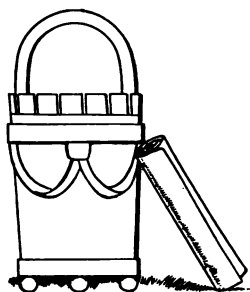
A. 1. What is under the bench, Marcus? 2. Where are the boys, Quintus? Let's play ball in the shade. 3. What do you see in the grass now, boys? 4. We brought a doll to school; and so we have been punished. 5. Why did you run out of school, Quintus?

B. 1. "The school bag is in the tent," said Julia. "It lies with the books in the doll's cradle." 2. "What do you see, Claudia?" asked Mārcella. "I see the boys in



STILUS ET TABULAE

Tablets were commonly made by putting a layer of wax upon strips of wood. Upon such tablets school children traced letters with a *stilus*, which was a piece of metal shaped somewhat like a pencil. The writing end of the *stilus* was very sharp, while the other was often flattened so that it could be used to erase marks made in the wax.



CAPSA

The *capsa* was, strictly, a box rather than a bag. It was circular in form, and had a cover. Rolls of manuscript (*libri*) standing on end fitted very nicely into such a box. Sometimes a slave was sent along to carry a boy's *capsa* to school for him. The above illustration is somewhat stiff and formal in its style.

the fields," replied Claudia. "They have come from school, and are now on the horse's back." 3. "I sent Quintus to the store," said the farmer. "We saw Marcus in the store," said the boys; "but Quintus has gone into the sailors' boat."

EXERCISE XIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, -a, -um, good

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
Gen.	boni	bonae	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
Dat.	bono	bonae	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
Abl.	bono	bona	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis

REMARK. Note that the masculine of the adjective is declined like *hortus*, the feminine like *mēsa*, and the neuter like *mālum*. The forms should now be memorized from left to right, thus: (Nom.) *bonus, bona, bonum*; (Gen.) *boni, bonae, boni*, etc.

VOCABULARY

albus, -a, -um, white.

magnus, -a, -um, big, large,

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, weary.

etc.

longus, -a, -um, long.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little.

etc.

RULE. *An adjective has the same gender, case, and number as the noun to which it belongs; e.g., puellae parvae, puellās bonās, etc.*

REMARK. It should be remembered that a few nouns of the first declension are masculine. With these, of course, the masculine forms of the adjective must be used; e.g., *nautae magni, nautās bonos*, etc.

MODEL SENTENCES

Mārcus est parvus, Marcus is small. *Auth. Comp.*
Quintus est agricola, Quintus is a farmer.

RULE. *With forms of the verb sum, an adjective referring to the subject of the verb is called a Predicate Adjective, and a noun referring to the same thing as the subject is called a Predicate Noun. Predicate Adjectives and Nouns stand in the same case as the subject of the verb.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. **Mārci equus albus est; caudam longam habet.**
 2. **Cūr ad tabernam iērunt agricolae dēfessī?** 3. **In agricolārum dēfessōrum corbulis fuērunt mālā magna et bācae albae.** 4. **Quid in capsā habent puellae parvae, Claudia?**

B. 1. **"Cūr nautae simiam magnam in caveam mīsistī, Iūlia?"** inquit Mārcus. **"Simia pūpās parvās in aquam vēxit,"** inquit Iūlia; **"tum poenās dedit."** 2. **"Ubi est Claudiae capsā, Mārce?"** inquit Mārcella. **"Capsam Quīntus in āreā vīdit,"** inquit Mārcus; **"sed tabulae et stilus in subselliō iacent."** 3. **"Ubi nunc est Claudia, Quīnte?"** inquit Iūlia. **"Magister bonus Claudiam ē lūdō in hortum dūxit,"** inquit Quīntus.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. **What is on the white monkey's shoulder, Julia?**
 2. **Why do the girls teach the dolls?** 3. **What did the big sailor's horse carry on (his) back, Marcus?** 4. **And so we sent Quintus to school with a book and a small tablet.**

B. 1. **"The girls have gone to school, Quintus,"** said Marcus; **"let's play ball in the dolls' garden."** 2. **"Why did you bring the farmer's horses from the fields into the**

street, Quintus?" asked Julia; "they are now frightening the little boys and girls." "Quintus is a good boy," replied Claudia. "He ran and brought the horses into the street, because we saw big monkeys in the fields. Horses are afraid of monkeys."

EXERCISE XV

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION

habeō

INDICATIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habēbō <i>I shall have</i>	habēbimus <i>we shall have</i>
2d person	habēbis <i>you will</i>	habēbitis <i>you " "</i>
3d person	habēbit <i>he " "</i>	habēbunt <i>they " "</i>

Conjugate in the same way the future tense of doceō, iaceō, lateō, sedeō, teneō, terreō, timeō, videō.

VOCABULARY

malus, -a, -um, <i>bad, etc.</i>	iēcī, <i>I threw, I have thrown.</i>
filia, -ae, F., <i>daughter.</i>	crās, <i>adverb, to-morrow.</i>
filius, fili, M., <i>son, boy.</i>	nam, <i>conjunction, far.</i>
frēgi, <i>I broke, I have broken.</i>	

REMARK. Note the slight irregularity in the genitive singular of *filius*. The other cases of this noun proceed regularly (*filiō, filium, etc.*), excepting the vocative singular, which also has *fili*. The vocative *fili* commonly appears in the combination *mī fili*, "my son," "my boy."

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque nauta malus Mārcellae capsam in aquam iēcit. 2. Quid tum in āreā vidistis? Quid nunc in hortō vidētis? 3. Ubi, mī fili, crās sedēbis? 4. In equī tergō sedēbō. 5. Cūr agricolae filii magnī, Quīnte, nautam bonum ē cymbā in harēnam iēcērunt?

B. 1. "Quid in viā crās vidēbimus, Mārce?" inquit puellae. "Equōs albōs et sīmiās parvās crās in viā vidēbitis," inquit Mārcus. 2. "Claudia ē tabernāculō in hortum cum Quīntō cucurrit," inquit Iūlia; "ubi nunc est?" "In herbā tum latuit," inquit Mārcella. "Sed nunc in pūpārum cūnis dēfessa iacet; nam Claudia parva est puella." 3. "Ubi est pila?" inquit Mārcus. "Agricolae filius puer est malus," inquit Quīntus; "pilam in tabernāculum iēcit et pūpam frēgit. Sed tūm vēnit agricola, et filius malus poenās dedit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The farmer's daughter sent Marcus to the store; and so we have apples and berries. 2. Claudia and Marcella are good daughters; for they have come into the yard with tablets and pens. 3. Why does the monkey sit on the shoulder of the little boy, my son? 4. Claudia has thrown Marcus' pen into the sailor's basket.

B. 1. "The teacher will have long benches in the school," remarked Quintus. "We shall hide under the benches and frighten the girls," said Marcus. 2. "The sailor's bad boy broke a bench at school," said Claudia. "To-morrow he will hide; for the teacher will then see the bench." 3. "Why do you frighten the tired monkeys, Quintus?" asked Marcus. "I am frightening the monkeys," replied Quintus, "because they broke Claudia's shells."

EXERCISE XVI

IRREGULAR VERB

sum

FUTURE TENSE INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	erō	erimus
2d person	eris	eritis
3d person	erit	erunt

VOCABULARY

lupus, -i, m., <i>wolf.</i>	hodiē, adverb, <i>to-day.</i>
silva, -ae, f., <i>forest, woods.</i>	ibi, adverb, <i>there, in that</i>
validus, -a, -um, <i>strong,</i>	<i>place.</i>
<i>sturdy, powerful.</i>	nōn, adverb, <i>not.</i>
	occidi, <i>I killed, I have killed.</i>

REMARK. Distinguish carefully between the use of the word "there" in the sentences: "*There* are roses in the garden," and "We ran into the garden; *there* we saw a wolf." When, as in the second sentence, "there" means "in that place," it is to be rendered by *ibi*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Itaque crās in silvā cum Quīntō erimus, Mārcella. Ibi lupōs magnōs vidēbimus. 2. Tum Claudia puella bona erit; sed nunc in āreā puerōs parvōs terret. 3. Pilā lūdāmus. Sīmiam hodiē docēbimus. 4. Lupus malus ē silvā vēnit et Mārci sīmiam occidit. Sed tum lupum dēfessum occidit agricola validus.

B. 1. "Quid in lūdō frēgit Mārcus?" inquit Claudia. "Mārcus stilum longum frēgit," inquit Iūlia; "tum ē lūdō ad cymbam cucurrit. Ibi nautae malī puerum in aquam iēcērunt." 2. "Cūr es puer malus, mī fili?" inquit agricola. "Puer malus nōn sum," inquit filius, "sed quia magistrum timeō, ē lūdō cucurri." 3. "Ubi eritis?" inquit Mārcus. "In tergō albī equī sedēbimus," inquiunt puellae. "Pūpa in sīmiaē umerō sedēbit." 4. "Cūr Claudiaē pūpam occīdistis, puerī?" inquit Iūlia. "Pūpam occīdimus," inquit Mārcus, "quia Claudia sīmiaē caveam frēgit."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. In the school there will be good books and tablets, but the sailor will be the teacher. 2. Why did the farmer's horse carry the girls into the forest to-day? 3. What shall we see in the woods, my boy? 4. There will be a wolf there. 5. The sailor's daughter will not teach the little boys.

B. 1. "Why was Marcus punished to-day, Quintus?" asked Julia. "He threw the sailor's little monkey into the store," answered Quintus, "and so he was punished. But to-morrow he will be a good boy." 2. "What do you see now, girls?" said the farmer's tired daughter. "We see a strong wolf in the field," replied Claudia. "He has run out of the woods and killed the big horse. But he does not see the boys; for they have hidden in the grass." 3. "To-morrow," said Marcus, "the boys and girls will be in the forest. There the girls will be afraid of wolves and monkeys; but the boys will not be afraid."

EXERCISE XVII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS
(continued)**miser, -era, -erum, wretched, poor****piger, -gra, -grum, lazy**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	piger	pigrā	pigrum
Gen.	miserī	miserāe	miserī	pigrī	pigrāe	pigrī
Dat.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	pigrō	pigrāe	pigrō
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	pigrum	pigram	pigrum
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō

NOTE. The plural of these adjectives is declined in the same way as the plural of **bonus**. Note that the singular, too, is like **bonus**, excepting that **miser** has the peculiarities of **puer**, while **piger** follows **ager**, losing its **e** throughout.

VOCABULARY

porta, -ae, F., gate.**heri, adverb, yesterday.****oppidum, -i, N., town.****in, preposition, used with****saxum, -i, N., rock, stone.**the accusative case, **at,****cecidī, I fell, I have fallen.****against, upon, to.**

REMARK. The preposition **in** with the accusative normally means "into," as already stated. But with verbs of throwing, falling, and the like, the meanings given in this vocabulary are sometimes called for.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque agricolae bonī et nautae validi ē portā oppidī heri iērunť, et cucurrērunt in silvam. 2. Hodie



PORTA

From Gusman's *Pompeii*, by permission of Messrs. Dodd, Mead and Company.

This illustration shows one of the gates in the ruined wall of Pompeii. Note the strength of the wall and the substantial way in which the street is paved.

agricolārum equī miserī in aquam cecidērunt; crās in agrīs erunt. 3. Mārcus nauta erit; sed agricola erit Quīntus.

4. Nam puerī pigri saxa in aquam iēcērunt.

B. 1. "Ubi est Mārcus?" inquit Mārcella. "Mārcus in oppidum hodiē iit," inquit Quīntus. "Via est longa, et crās puerum dēfessum vidēbimus." 2. "In harēnā conchās albās herī vidī," inquit Claudia; "tum cum corbulis iimus, et bonī agricolae equus conchās in āream vēxit." 3. "Sīmia ē corbulā in pūpārum cūnās cecidit," inquit Mārcus; "cūnās et pūpās frēgit miserās. Tum Iūlia cucurrit ē tabernāculō et saxum in sīmiam iēcit; sed saxum in caudam sīmiae cecidit, et Claudiae pūpae sellam frēgit."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. What is on the lazy horse's back, Quintus? 2. The gate of the town is large, but the streets are not long. 3. The boys killed a small wolf there yesterday. You shall see (its) tail to-morrow, Marcus. 4. And so you will not be teacher to-day. 5. The bad boys will sit on the long bench. 6. What did the sailor fear?

B. 1. "Where will you hide, girls?" asked Marcus. "We shall hide under the stairs," replied the girls. "I am tired," said Marcus; "I shall hide with lazy Quintus under the bench." 2. "The farmer sent (his) strong son from the forest to the town," remarked Claudia. "But the boy saw the sailors' big monkey in the road; and so he ran into a garden."

EXERCISE XVIII

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION

habeō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habeam	habeāmus
2d person	habeās	habeātis
3d person	habeat	habeant

REMARK. Memorize the above forms. The next Exercise will show one of the ways in which they are to be used.

VOCABULARY

lutum, -i, n., *mud.* columba, -ae, f., *dove.*
 terra, -ae, f., *ground, floor.* dedi, *I gave, I have given.*

DATIVE CASE. MODEL SENTENCES

Tum Quintus Claudiae "Ubi est capsā?" inquit, Then said Quintus to Claudia, "Where is the school bag?"

Iūlia Mārco mālum dedit, Julia gave an apple to Marcus.

RULE. *The dative case is used of the person to whom something is said or given. Thus used, the dative is called the Indirect Object of the verb.*

REMARK. The dative of the Indirect Object must be carefully distinguished from the accusative of the Direct Object. Thus, in the second of the model sentences above, mālum is the thing directly affected by the verb action (direct object), while Mārco (indirect object) is merely the person *to whom* is given the thing thus directly affected.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Cūr equī validī, Quīnte, saxa in oppidum hodiē vēxerunt? 2. Quīntus et Mārcus puerī bonī sunt; nam ē portā oppidī vēnerunt, et mālā et bācās agricolae miserō dedērunt. 3. Ubi crās erunt filii nautārum pigrōrum? Herī sēderunt in cymbā, et Quīntī equum album terruerunt. 4. Quid agricolae filia nautae malī filiō dedit?

B. 1. "Quid in silvā vidēbitis?" pueris inquit Mārcella. "Lupōs parvōs vidēbimus," inquit Mārcus; "nam agricolae herī iērunt in silvam, et magnōs lupōs occidērunt." 2. Tum Iūlia Mārcō, "Cūr capsam," inquit, "Quīntō nōn dedisti?" "Capsam nōn dedi," inquit Mārcus, "quia Quīntus herī frēgit Claudiae tabulās, et stilum in lutum iēcit." 3. "Quid in lūdō hodiē vidisti?" Iūliae dēfessae inquit Mārcella. "Simia in lūdum vēnit," inquit Iūlia, "et in Claudiae umerō sēdit. Tum ad puellam magister cucurrit. Simia misera timuit et in terram cecidit; nunc in caveā iacet."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Why did the boys break the poor dolls' table, Marcus? 2. What did you give to the lazy sailor, my boy? 3. Why did the tired teacher send Marcus from school to-day? 4. And so the bad boys brought the little wolf into the tent; there they sat on the doll's chairs and broke the cradle.

B. 1. "The dove will sit on the monkey's back, Claudia," said Julia. 2. "Yesterday Quintus threw apples at the dove," remarked Claudia; "then he was punished." 3. "Why did you not go to school to-day?" said Marcella to Quintus. "I fell into the mud," replied Quintus; "but

strong horses carried Marcus to school. He is now sitting there with the boys on the long benches." 4. "Are you going to be lazy to-morrow?" said Julia to Claudia. "I will be a good girl to-morrow," replied Claudia; "where are the books, Julia?"

EXERCISE XIX

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION

habēō

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habērem	habērēmus
2d person	habērēs	habērētis
3d person	habēret	habērent

VOCABULARY

ancilla, -ae, F., <i>maidservant, maid.</i>	compleō, <i>I fill, I am filling; perfect tense, complēvi.</i>
spelunca, -ae, F., <i>cave, den.</i>	olim, <i>adverb, once (upon a time).</i>
ursa, -ae, F., <i>bear.</i>	ut, <i>conjunction, (so as) to, (so) that.</i>

MODEL SENTENCES

Iūlia latet, ut Mārcum terreat, Julia is hiding to frighten Marcus.

Iūlia latuit, ut Mārcum terrēret, Julia hid to frighten Marcus.

RULE. *The purpose for which a thing is done may be expressed by ut and the subjunctive.*

NOTE. In this construction the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the tense of the main verb of the sentence. If the main verb is a present or future, the present subjunctive is used in the purpose clause; if the main verb is a past, the imperfect subjunctive is used. These points are illustrated in the model sentences above.

REMARK 1. In writing Latin purpose clauses, careful attention must be given to the person and number of the verb. In English we may say "I came *to see*," "you came *to see*," "he came *to see*," "they came *to see*," etc., making no change whatever in the form of the purpose clause; but if these four sentences should be translated into Latin, each purpose clause of course would be different, namely, *vēni ut vidērem, vēnistī ut vidērēs, vēnit ut vidēret, vēnerunt ut vidērent*. In case of doubt, the proper Latin form can always be found by expanding the English purpose clause: for example, "I came to see" = "I came that *I might see*"; "you came to see" = "you came that *you might see*"; etc.

REMARK 2. The subject of the main verb of the sentence and the subject of the verb of the purpose clause of course need not be identical; e.g. *Agricola ex agrō vēnit, ut Claudia equum vidēret, the farmer came from the field, so that Claudia might see the horse.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. *Puerī bācās magnās vident. Itaque in herbā iacent, ut corbulās compleant.* 2. *In silvam hodiē iimus, ut ursarum albārum spēluncam vidērēmus.* 3. *Cūr in agrōs, puer piger, cum miserī agricolae filiis dēfessīs nōn vēnistī?* 4. *Sub mēnsā sedēbō, ut sīmiam doceam.* 5. *Mārcus ad oppidum cucurrit, ut Iūlia capsam habēret; Quīntō stilum dedit.*

B. 1. *"Cūr ursās miserās, agricolae malī, occīdistis?" inquit Iūlia. Tum agricolae Iūliae "Ursās occīdimus,"*

inquiunt, "quia pueri et puellae spēluncam timent; nam
olim ursae ibi puerum parvum occiderunt." 2. "Crās,"
inquit Mārcus, "sub scālis latēbimus, ut puellās terreāmus."
"Ibi heri latuī," inquit Quīntus, "ut Claudiam et Iūliam
terrērem. Sed cum puellīs fuit ancilla; itaque hodiē
poenās dedī." 3. "Columbam albam Mārcellae dedisti,
Mārce," inquit Iūlia; "cūr nōn simiam Claudiaē dedit
Quīntus?" "Nauta malus heri vēnit in hortum," inquit
Mārcus, "et simiam miseram occidit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The good sailor to-day came from the town to teach
the boys and girls. 2. Why did you throw the books
of the farmer's daughters into the bears' cage, Quintus?
3. Why did they not fill the large baskets and give the
berries to the poor girls? 4. Where will you hide to-
morrow to see the bears?

B. 1. "Once upon a time," said Marcus, "I gave
Quintus a dove and a cage. He killed the dove, and the
maid threw the cage into the water." 2. "We ran from
the yard to see the strong sailors," said Jūlia. "Yester-
day they brought bears and wolves from the woods
into the town." 3. "The girls have come to sit on the
stairs, Quintus," said Marcus. "Let's play ball in the
fields with the boys." 4. "Where are Quintus and
Claudia, Marcus?" asked Julia. "They have gone into
the field to hide in the grass," answered Marcus.

EXERCISE XX

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
ego, I		tū, you	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR · PLURAL
Nominative	ego	nōs	tū vōs
Genitive	mei	nostrum nostrī	tui vestrum vestri
Dative	mihi	nōbis	tibi vōbis
Accusative	mē	nōs	tē vōs
Ablative	mē	nōbis	tē vōbis

REMARK. When used with the ablative forms of these pronouns, the preposition *cum* follows, and is written as a part of the word; *i.e.*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *nōbiscum*, *vōbiscum*. Note how the addition of *-cum* affects the accent of *nōbis* and *vōbis*.

VOCABULARY

gremium, -i, N., *bosom, lap.*

multi, -ae, -a, *many.*

lectus, -i, M., *bed, couch.*

moneō, I *warn, I advise;*

pecūnia, -ae, F., *money.*

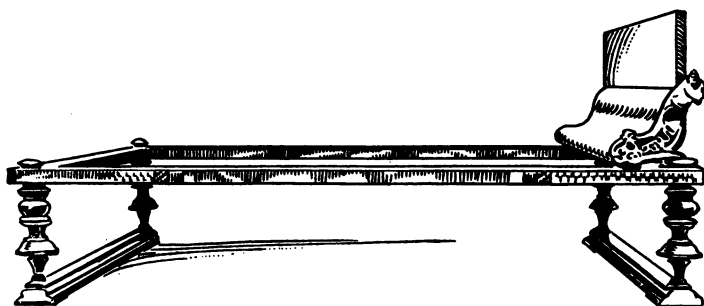
perfect tense, *monui.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Quid hodiē tibi dedit agricola, Quinte? Quid vōbis dedit nauta, puellae? 2. Agricolae mihi pecūniam dedērunt, ut filiōs docērem. 3. Ancilla ursās magnās in agrō vidit; itaque in āream cucurrit, ut in tabernāculō latēret. 4. Puella in lectō sedet, ut sīmiam dēfessam in gremiō teneat.

B. 1. "Pecūniam tibi dedī, Quinte," inquit Mārcus, "ut sīmiam docērēs. Cūr in lūdum sīmiam tēcum nōn dūxistī?" 2. Tum agricolis bonīs Iūlia "Herī," inquit,



LECTUS

The illustration shows the bronze frame of a bed found at Pompeii. Often a *lectus* was provided with a footboard and back, and thus looked very much like an old-fashioned sofa with a pillow at one end.

"bācās multās nōbīs dedistis ; corbulās complēvimus. Crās māla habēbitis?" 3. "Cūr in ursae spēluncam cucurristī, Mārce?" inquit nauta. "In spēluncam cucurri," inquit Mārcus, "ut Claudiam monērem." 4. "Ōlim ē saxīs magnīs in lutum cecidit lupus," inquit Iūlia. "Tum ē spēluncā vēnit ursā valīda, et lupum miserum occīdit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Then we gave the farmer's daughter sandals and a doll, Julia. What did the farmer give you? 2. Claudia has come with me to warn the sailors. 3. Why did they not give you a strong boat, boys? 4. The doll is sitting on the bench, so that the monkey may lie on the bed. For Marcella is holding the white dove in (her) lap.

B. 1. "Why did the teacher give me the apples, Claudia?" asked Quintus. "He gave you the apples," replied Claudia, "so that we should sit with you in the shade; for he has sent Julia and Marcus into the fields. Where *are* the apples?" 2. "What did you give the farmer's lazy son yesterday?" said Claudia to Quintus. "We gave the boy money," replied Quintus. "And so he went with us into the yard to fill the baskets; for there are many berries in the shade." 3. "I will sit with you, girls," said Marcus; "but I do not see the books and tablets."

EXERCISE XXI

MODEL SENTENCE

Mārcus in hortum iit, ego in tabernāculum cucurri,
Marcus went into the garden, I ran into the tent.

RULE. *As subject of a verb, the personal pronouns ego (nōs) and tū (vōs) are in general written only for emphasis or clearness or to mark a contrast.*

VOCABULARY

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

meus, -a, -um, my, mine.	noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours.
tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (in speaking to one person).	vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (in speaking to more than one person).

REMARK. The vocative of the masculine singular of **meus** is **mī**, a form already familiar in the phrase **mī fili**.

NOTE. The genitive of the personal pronouns **ego** and **tū** is not used to tell to whom something belongs, such use of the genitive being rendered unnecessary by the above Possessive Adjectives; e.g., **liber meus, stilus tuus**, etc. (To use the genitive of **ego** and **tū** in such phrases would be as bad as to say in English "the book of me" instead of "my book," etc.)

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. **Ubi sunt, puellae, columbae vestrae?** 2. **Ego tibi librum dedī; tū stilum meum in lutum iēcistī.** 3. **Tū equōs et simiās timuistī; nōs multās ursās validās et lupōs magnōs vīdimus.** 4. **Itaque pūpa tua in gremiō simiae nostrae iacet.**

B. 1. "**Ancilla dēfessa nōbīscum in agrōs iit,**" inquit **puellae**. "**Ibi equō tuō, Quīnte, māla dedimus.**" 2. **Tum Mārcō "Ubi est," inquit nauta, "pecūnia nostra?" "Pecūnia in spēluncā herī fuit," inquit Mārcus, "nunc sub lectō meō iacet; nam capsam complēvi.**" 3. "**Cūr nōn cucurristī, Quīnte,**" inquit **Claudia**, "**ut agricolās miserōs monērēs?" "Nōn cucurri," inquit Quīntus, "quia agricolae pigri sunt.**" 4. "**Cūr, mī fili, puerōs nōn misistī,**" inquit **agricola**, "**ut cymbam meam vidērent?" "Mīsī puerōs," inquit filius; "sed nautae malī Mārcum in aquam iēcērunt, et Quīntus in tabernāculō nostrō latuit."**

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. You will sit on the beach to-morrow, girls ; *I* shall lie in the shade. 2. I gave my tablet and your pen to Marcus' teacher. 3. And so the tired sailors ran to the white boat ; *we* went to school. 4. Why did the farmer go with you into the big store, boys ?

B. 1. "What did you see in the towns?" said Marcus to Quintus. "I saw strong gates and long streets," replied Quintus. 2. "Claudia is hiding in your tent, Quintus," said Julia ; "we will sit in the yard to warn the boys." 3. "You ran into our tent to-day and threw big stones upon the dolls' bed," said Marcella to Marcus and Quintus. "Yesterday you gave me the dolls, and now you have broken the bed." 4. "We saw the teacher to-day," said Quintus to the girls. "*I* ran to hide in the grass ; Marcus fell into the water."

EXERCISE XXII

THE SECOND OR *Ē*-CONJUGATION*habeo*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

PLUPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habuissem	habuissemus
2d person	habuissēs	habuissētis
3d person	habuisset	habuissent

REMARK. The pluperfect subjunctive active of verbs of all conjugations is inflected in the same way as *habuissem*. To find the first person singular of the pluperfect subjunctive active of any verb, simply change the *-ī* of the perfect indicative to *-issaem* ; e.g., *cucurri*, *cucurrissem* ; *ii*, (*iissem*) *iissem* ; *vēni*, *vēnissem* ; etc.

VOCABULARY

avia , -ae, F., <i>grandmother</i> .	cum , conjunction, <i>when</i> ,
avus , -i, M., <i>grandfather</i> .	<i>while, as, since</i> , etc.
liberī , -ōrum, M., <i>children</i> .	mox , adverb, <i>soon</i> .

MODEL SENTENCES

Cum Mārcus lupum terrēret, puellae in cymbam cucurrerunt, While Marcus frightened the wolf, the girls ran into the boat.

Agricolae, cum in silvam vēnissent, ursam occidērunt, When the farmers had come into the woods, they killed a bear.

RULE. *The circumstances under which a thing took place may be described by the use of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, introduced by the conjunction cum.*

NOTE. The imperfect subjunctive in this construction describes action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb of the sentence, whereas the pluperfect refers to an antecedent action. See the model sentences above.

REMARK. In the second of the models, note that **Agricolae**, the logical subject of both clauses, is given first position in the sentence. This is the normal Latin arrangement, but it should not be copied in the English translation.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Cum puerī ē lūdō vēnissent, Claudia ex āreā cucurrit, ut mēcum sub scālīs latēret. 2. Mārci avia pecūniam mihi et Quīntō dedit; itaque puerī bonī erimus. 3. Liberī, cum in oppidum īssent, Claudiae avum et aviam in viā vidērunt. 4. Mārcella in aviae gremiō est, Quīnte. Cūr nōn in cūnīs iacet puella?

B. 1. "Cum in lūdō sedērem," inquit Iūlia, "librī ē capsā meā in terram cecidērunt." "Poenās tum dedistī?" inquit Claudia. *2.* "Ubi est nauta malus?" inquit Quīntus. "Nauta herī agricolām miserum occidit," inquit Mārcus. "Tum in silvam cucurrit, et nunc in spēluncā latet." *3.* "Cūr filiae agricolārum Mārcum dēfessum in silvam misērunt?" inquit Iūlia. "Mārcum misērunt," inquit Quīntus, "ut nautam monēret; nam ursae multae in spēluncis sunt." *4.* Quīntus, cum in hortum ex agrīs vēnisset, Mārcō "Ubi sunt corbulae nostrae?" inquit. "Meās corbulās agricolis bonīs dedi," inquit Mārcus; "sed tuae in āreā sunt."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. When Marcus came from the store, he went into the fields. Soon he will be upon the back of your strong horse, Quintus. *2.* I threw a stone; but *you* broke the bench. *3.* While Julia was teaching the girls, the boys went to see the horses. *4.* I will frighten the monkey, so that the boys may fill the cage; for there are many stones in the sand.

B. 1. "Why did the maid come with you from the boat, Claudia?" asked Julia. "My grandmother sent the maid with us," replied Claudia, "because there are many wolves in the woods. While we were sitting there in the shade, I saw a white bear." *2.* "What did you see in the forest to-day, my daughter?" said the farmer. "When we came out of the town," replied the girl, "we saw a little wolf. Marcus threw a stone at the wolf, Quintus ran into a cave, and I hid in the grass." *3.* "Where are your school bags, girls?" asked Marcella. "Our school bags are (out) in the field," answered the tired girls; "but we have your books."

EXERCISE XXIII

• VOCABULARY

ūva, -ae, F., *grape*.vulpēcula, -ae, F., *little*per, preposition, used with the *fox*.accusative case, *through*, *invēni, I found, I have found;*
by way of, etc. *I discovered, I have dis-**covered.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. In āreā vestrā vulpēculās multās herī invēnimus.
 2. Mārcus vulpēculam dēfessam in caveam dūxit; nōs in agrum cucurrimus. 3. Līberī, cum per silvam vēnissent, in oppidum nōbiscum iērunt, ut lūdum nostrum vidērent.
 4. In viā sedeō, ut agricolās moneam; nam lupus validus in hortō latet. 5. Avus et avia mea cum ancillis ex oppidō herī vērunt. Mox in hortō erunt, ut bācās et ūvās et mālā magna videant.

B. 1. "Cūr per silvam istī, filia mea?" inquit agricola. "Per silvam ii," inquit filia, "quia puella magna sum; vulpēculās nōn timeō." 2. "Quid in capsā tuā invēnit Mārcus?" inquit Iūlia. "Librōs et stilum invēnit," inquit Claudia; "nam tabulae meae in tabernāculō sunt." 3. "Lectus puerī pigri sub scālis est," inquit Mārcus. "Magister mē misit, ut lectum vidērem." 4. "Cūr tibi, Mārce, pecūniam dedērunt agricolae?" inquit Quintus. "Pecūniam mihi dedērunt," inquit Mārcus, "quia piger nōn sum. Herī tē in agrōs misērunt, sed tū equōs ad aquam nōn dūxisti."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Once a little fox came into our garden to see the grapes. 2. As Marcus was lying in the grass, he threw

a stone at a little girl. 3. The stones fell upon my grandfather's basket, and broke the white doves' cage. 4. When you had come into the woods, what did you find, my son? 5. I saw a powerful wolf, and Quintus found a tired sailor in the shade.

B. 1. "The teacher has sent us from school," said Claudia to Marcella. "The boys will soon be in the fields," replied Marcella; "then we will sit in the boat and see the shells in the water." 2. "The little fox was afraid of the wolf," said Julia. "But the bear frightened the wolf; and so the little fox has now gone into the cave to lie in the shade." 3. "I warned you to-day, boys," said the teacher, "but you have not given me the apples and berries." "We threw the berries into the mud," replied Marcus, "and the apples are in the water." 4. "Where are the doves?" asked Marcella. "My dove is on the shoulder of the farmer's daughter," replied Julia; "the sailor's bad son has killed yours."

EXERCISE XXIV

IRREGULAR VERB

sum

	IMPERFECT TENSE	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	essem <i>I might be</i>	essēmus <i>purpose</i>
2d person	essēs <i>you were</i>	essētis
3d person	esset	essent

NOTE. The pluperfect subjunctive of this verb is *fuissem*. See the Remark on *habuissem* in Exercise XXII.

VOCABULARY

lūna, -ae, *F.*, *moon*.stella, -ae, *F.*, *star*.caelum, -i, *N.*, *sky*.-que, conjunction, *and*.

REMARK. The conjunction *-que* follows the word to which it belongs, and is written as part of that same word; *e.g.*, *puer puellāque*, "the boy and girl." Note how the addition of *-que* influences the accent of the word to which it is joined, and compare the effect of *-cum* in the combinations *nōbiscum* and *vōbiscum* (Exercise XX).

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Quid in caelō, Mārce, tū vidēs? Ego lūnam stellāsque vidēō. 2. Quīntus, cum in cymbā meā esset, saxa in aquam iēcit. 3. Agricolaē vōbīs, puerī, pecūniam dedērunt, ut equōs in viā tenērētis. 4. Vulpēcula tua, Iūlia, herī in āreā ūvās multās invēnit. Hodīē bācās habēbit; nam corbulam complēvi.

B. 1. Tum Mārcō "Nauta validus," inquit Quīntus, "mē in cymbam mīsīt sīmiamque meam in harēnā terruit." 2. "Claudia, cum ex hortō mēcum vēnisset," inquit Iūlia, "bācās mālaque Mārcī sīmiae dedit." 3. "Ubi est pūpārum lectus, puellae?" inquit Mārcella. "Lectus in tabernāculō est," inquiunt puellae; "itaque ibi cum pūpīs sedēbimus." 4. "Ōlim," inquit nauta piger, "cum lūna in caelō esset, ursā ē spēluncā vēnit et vulpēculam miseram occidit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. When your grandfather, boys, had given us books and school bags, he sent us to school. 2. The gate of the town is small, Quīntus. 3. What did the powerful horses carry through the fields into the town? 4. My

grandmother and the maid will sit with you, Julia. *I* shall be in the boat; for I am tired.

B. 1. "When Julia was holding the dove in (her) lap," said Claudia, "a big wolf came into the yard." 2. Then said the farmer's daughter to Marcella, "Why did Marcus break my chair and bench?" "He broke the bench," replied Marcella, "because you killed our dove yesterday. But he is not a bad boy; he did not break your chair." 3. "Why are you sitting in the yard, Marcus?" said Quintus; "to see little foxes? The little foxes are now in the woods; but soon many will be in the fields."

EXERCISE XXV

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION

habeō

INDICATIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

PLUPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habueram	habuerāmus
2d person	habuerās	habuerātis
3d person	habuerat	habuerant

REMARK. The pluperfect indicative active of verbs of all conjugations is inflected in the same way as *habueram*. To find the first person singular of the pluperfect indicative active of any verb, simply change the -*i* of the perfect indicative to -*eram*; e.g., *cucurri*, *cucurreram*; *ii*, *ieram*; *vēni*, *vēneram*; etc.

NOTE. The pluperfect tense is used in referring to a past event which preceded another past event; e.g., *Mārcus mox in hortum vēnit*; *sed Quintus in agrōs ierat*, *Marcus soon came into the garden; but Quintus had gone into the fields.*

VOCABULARY

latebrae, -ārum, F., <i>hiding place.</i>	celeriter, adverb, <i>swiftly, quickly.</i>
ērūpī, <i>I rushed (out), I burst forth, etc.</i>	diū, adverb, <i>for a long time, long, etc.</i>

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Cum puellae dēfessae diū in tabernāculō fuissent, Mārcus in āream vēnit pūpāsque in aquam iēcit. 2. Agricola in oppidum mēcum ierat; itaque Quīntus nōs in agris nōn invēnit. 3. In lūdō poenās dedī, quia magistrī stilum frēgeram. 4. Tum ē latebris ērūpit Quīntus; sed ego diū in herbā latuī.

B. 1. "Diū ursas nōn invēnimus," inquit agricola. "Tum multae ērūpērunt ē spēluncā magnā, nautāsque validōs terruērunt; et equus meus, cum ursās vīdisset, ē silvā cucurrit mēque per agrōs celeriter vēxit." 2. "Quid Mārcō dedisti, mī fili?" inquit nauta piger. "Mārcō vulpēculam malam dedī," inquit filius; "sed mihi Mārcus pecūniam dederat." 3. "Lūna est stella magna," inquit Claudia. "In caelō lūna est," inquit Quīntus; "sed nōn est stella." 4. "Mārcus, cum per āream in hortum cucurrisset," inquit Mārcella, "nōs in cymbam cum Claudiā mīsīt, quia in agrō lupum magnum viderat."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Your grandmother gave grapes to the children, Quintus. Why did she not give me berries? The farmer had filled the baskets. 2. The tired monkey is hiding in the dolls' bed; he is afraid of the wolf and bear. 3. Then the maid brought us into the fields. There the bears had killed your little fox, boys; for we found the tail. 4. You

have frightened the teacher, Marcus; and so I will teach the children to-day.

B. 1. "My apples fell out of the basket into the mud," said Julia. "Then, when the bad boys had come from school, they threw the apples at our poor doves." 2. "To-day, when I was sitting in the woods," said Quintus to Julia, "I saw a bear. And so I ran quickly to warn Marcus; but he had rushed out of the cave and gone into the sailors' boat." 3. Then said Claudia, "When the sailors had sat for a long time in the sand, they came into the field and sent us into the yard." 4. "When the monkey fell to the ground," said Quintus, "he ran quickly into the cage, and sat there a long time. Now he is afraid of your little foxes, boys."

EXERCISE XXVI

VOCABULARY

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.

interim, adverb, *meanwhile*,
in the meantime.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. In mēnsā sedēbit Quintus, ut in subselliō Iūlia sedeat. 2. Mārcus, cum in silvā esset, lūnam stellāsque multās in caelō vidit. 3. Mox lupī ē spēluncīs ērūpērunt; sed interim agricolae validī in silvam cum sagittīs ierant. 4. Nauta cum puellīs filium ad lūdum miserat, ut filius puer bonus esset.

B. 1. Tum Mārcō "Tibi tabulam meam dedi," inquit Claudia; "cūr tū Mārcellae capsam nōn dedisti?" 2. "Puerī malī saxa herī in caveam iēcērunt," inquit Claudia; "sed simia nostra in tabernāculum cucurrerat.

Ibi diū sub lectō latuit." 3. "Hodiē agricolae, cum in silvam celeriter vēnissent," inquit Mārcus, "ursam albam lupumque magnum occidērunt." 4. "Quid in silvā vidistis, Mārce?" inquirunt puellae. "Cum ex agris in silvam vēnissēmus," inquit Mārcus, "Quīntus ursās timuit, sed ego ad spēluncam ii. Ibi sīmiae vestrae caudam vidī, puellae." 5. "Cum Quīntus corbulam agricolae dedisset," inquit Iūlia, "celeriter in hortum cucurrimus."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. I shall sit in the shade with you, my boy. 2. They have sent you, Quintus, to hold my monkey in your lap. 3. When the farmers were in the fields, a bad wolf went into the garden ; but he did not find the little fox. 4. The wolf killed a monkey, but the little fox had hidden in the grass. 5. And so the farmer's sons threw the apples into the large baskets.

B. 1. "You will soon see the girls, Claudia," said Quintus ; "in the meantime they will be in the boat with me." 2. "When the boys had thrown stones for a long time into the garden," said Julia, "they ran swiftly into the woods to hide in the cave." 3. "Once," said Marcus, "Julia had brought your little fox to school, Quintus. But the sailor's lazy son threw books and tablets at the girl and little fox." 4. "Meanwhile the bears had killed a farmer's horse," remarked the girl. "I saw the poor horse," said the sturdy sailor. "To-day I shall sit in the woods to frighten the bears ; for I have arrows." 5. "Where were you, boys?" asked Marcella. "Had you gone to the cage to see the white doves?"

EXERCISE XXVII

MODEL SENTENCE

Marcus sagittā columbam occidit, Marcus killed the dove with an arrow.

RULE. *The ablative without a preposition is used to tell the means by which anything is done. This use is known as the Ablative of Means.*

REMARK. Quite frequently, as in the above example, the Ablative of Means is conveniently rendered by "with." This "with" must not be confused with the "with" meaning "in company with," which, as previously shown, is represented in Latin by **cum** (and the ablative case). This latter construction is called the Ablative of Accompaniment.

VOCABULARY

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beau- ēmi, I bought, I have bought.
tiful, pretty, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque tuārum pūpārum cūnās harēnā puerī parvī complēvērunt, Iūlia. **2.** Agricola, cum in oppidū cum filiā pulchrā vēnisset, ibi bācās mālaque multa ēmit. **3.** Nam agricolae dēfessī interim in silvam mēcum ierant, ut in umbrā iacērent. **4.** Cūr, Quīnte, simiam meam saxō occidistī?

B. 1. "Cūr in tabernam iit Quīntus, Claudia?" inquit Iūlia. "Quīntus herī capsam pulchram in tabernā vidit," inquit Claudia; "hodiē pecūniam habet." **2.** "Corbulās

mālis complēvimus," inquit puellae, "quia agricolārum filiae nōbīs bācās dederant." 3. "Cūr sub scālis latet Mārcus piger?" inquit Mārcella. "Quia puer est malus," inquit Claudia; "nam cum equōs in agrōs dūxisset, celeriter in hortum cucurrit, ut ūvās vidēret, ibique columbārum caveam lutō complēvit." 4. "Avus meus," inquit Iūlia, "cum in silvam vēnisset, lupōrum spēluncam invēnit, lupumque validum sagittis occidit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Meanwhile we had gone into the fields with the farmers to frighten the horses with stones. 2. And so, when the pretty maid had sat for a long time in the shade with the sturdy sailor, she ran through the yard to fill the children's school bags with tablets and books. 3. For your grandmother has sent the farmer's big daughter, so that you would be good boys.

B. 1. "Soon many boys came with stones," said Julia, "and broke the dolls' pretty table." "Why did you not send me into the yard to frighten the bad children?" asked Quintus. 2. "Where did you find your sandals, girls?" said Claudia. "When we came into the yard and were sitting in the tent," replied Julia, "we saw Marcella's sandals in the grass; Marcus had thrown mine into the water." 3. "Quintus will hold the dove," said Marcus; "meanwhile we will warn the farmer, and scare the little foxes." 4. "The monkey's hiding place is under the stairs," said Marcus. "Yesterday he lay there a long time. But to-morrow the bad boys will be at school, and the monkey will then sit in the cage." X

EXERCISE XXVIII

PERSONAL PRONOUN

THIRD PERSON

is, ea, id; *he, she, it*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id <i>it this</i>	eī, īi, ī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs
Acc.	eum	eam	id <i>this it</i>	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs

REMARK. It must be remembered that the names of *things* in Latin may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter. Hence English "it" is variously represented in Latin. For example, in referring to a book (*liber*), "it" must be rendered by *is*; but in speaking of a table (*mēnsa*), *ea* should be used; and *id* would be the proper form when speaking of an apple (*mālum*).

NOTE. Like the other personal pronouns (*ego* and *tū*), the pronoun of the third person is in general written as subject of a verb only for clearness or emphasis, or to mark a contrast; *e.g.*, *Ego et Mārcus pigri sumus*; *ego in tabernaculō iaceō*, *is in herbā sedet*, *Marcus and I are lazy*; *I am lying in the tent, he is sitting in the grass*.

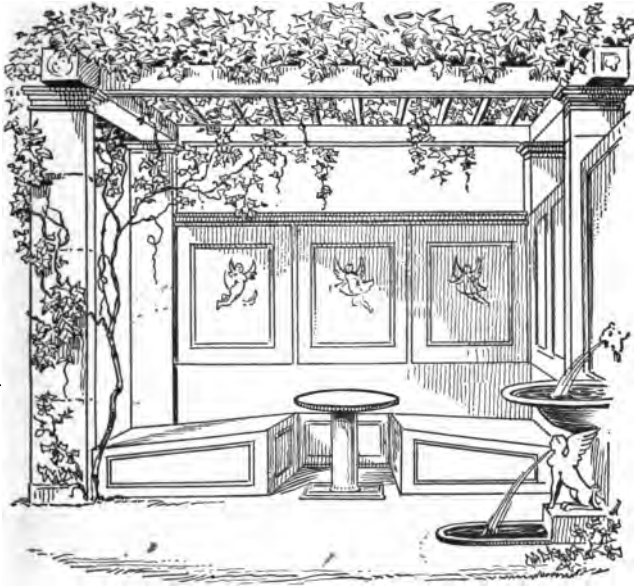
VOCABULARY

cēna, -ae, F., <i>dinner</i> .	coquus, -ī, M., <i>cook</i> .
culina, -ae, F., <i>kitchen</i> .	obesus, -a, -um, <i>stout, fat</i> .
patera, -ae, F., <i>dish, plate</i> .	ēdī, <i>I ate, I have eaten</i> .

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

- A. 1. Ubi est coquus? Cūr eī paterās nōn dedistis?
2. Cum in cymbā cum puellīs essēmus, lupum validum



AN OUTDOOR DINING ROOM

This corner of the courtyard of a house in Pompeii is restored in the illustration to something like its appearance before the eruption of Vesuvius in 79 B.C. In the center is a round stone table (*mēnsa*), on three sides of which are sloping couches of masonry. On occasion these couches were covered with cushions, and here guests would recline to partake of a feast (*cēna*), each man helping himself to the good things which the slaves placed on the table in the center. The pillars supporting the roof of the arbor were built of brick.

•

in harēnā vīdimus. Itaque eum sagittā nauta occīdit.
 3. Ego et Mārcus in silvam vēnerāmus; tum, cum diū in umbrā sēdissēmus, ego in hortum iī, is ad tabernam.
 4. Coquus obēsus per culinā cucurrit, pateramque magnam in sīmiam malam iēcit, quia ea liberōrum cēnam ēderat.

B. 1. Tum Quīntō "Ubi est patera mea?" inquit Mārcus. "Eam sub mēnsā videō," inquit Quīntus.
 2. "Cūr sub pūpārum lectō latet vulpēcula, Quīnte?" inquit Claudia. "Vulpēcula, cum in āream vēnisset," inquit Quīntus, "Iūliae columbās pulchrās vīdit, easque terruit; itaque nunc Iūliam timet." 3. "Avī equīs dēfessīs, cum ex agrīs herī issent," inquit Mārcus, "māla multa dedī; crās herbā corbulam meam complēbō." 4. "Coquus bācās ūvāsque ēmerat," inquit Mārcella; "sed, cum is in culinā sedēret, puerī malī bācās ūvāsque iēcērunt in aquam, corbulāsque lutō complēvērunt."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The farmers' dinner is on the horse's back; their plates are in the basket. 2. While the tired cook was lying on the sailor's bed, a little white fox came into his kitchen and ate the grapes. 3. Marcus went into the yard to see the beautiful moon and stars in the sky. He did not see them, for he fell into the mud. 4. Why did your grandmother and the stout maid go to town, Julia? 5. Why did the sailor come quickly from the gate of the town?

B. 1. "A poor boy came from the woods yesterday," said Julia, "to fill (his) baskets with berries. We gave him apples and grapes." 2. "What did the sailor give you, Marcus?" asked Julia. "When the wolves rushed forth from (their) hiding place," said Marcus, "the sailor gave

me arrows, and with them I killed a bear and a wolf.”
 3^X “While I was hiding in the shade to frighten a little fox,” said Claudia, “my school bag fell to the ground. Now I do not see it.” 4. “The teacher sent the lazy cook to the store,” said Marcella; “and while he was sitting there on a bench, Marcus ran into the kitchen with Quintus. There the bad boys ate the teacher’s dinner and broke his plates.”*

EXERCISE XXIX

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION

habeō

INDICATIVE MOOD ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habēbam	habēbāmus
2d person	habēbās	habēbātis
3d person	habēbat	habēbant

Conjugate in the same way the imperfect indicative active of **compleō**, **doceō**, **iaceō**, **lateō**, **moneō**, etc.

NOTE. The imperfect tense is used to describe something as *going on* at a definite point or period in past time; e.g., **Mārcus in āream vēnit**; **ego tum in tabernāculō sedēbam**, *Marcus came into the yard; I then WAS SITTING in the tent.*

REMARK. In the above example, note carefully how the use of **vēnit** differs from that of **sedēbam**. Thus the perfect **vēnit** simply states that something *happened*, whereas the imperfect **sedēbam** tells what *was happening* at that very same time (compare the use of the imperfect subjunctive in clauses introduced by **cum**, Exercise XXII). This peculiar force of the imperfect tense cannot be too firmly fixed in the mind.

Compare the meanings of the following tenses :

Present	sedeō	<i>I sit, I am sitting.</i>
Imperfect	sedēbam	<i>I was sitting.</i>
Perfect	sēdi	<i>I sat, (I have sat) I have been sitting.</i>

In the same way, give the meaning of each of these tenses of **compleō**, **doceō**, **iaceō**, **lateō**, **moneō**, **teneō**, **terreō**, **timeō**, **videō**.

REMARK. For the imperfect of **habeō**, the exact translation "I was having" is often hardly good English. But though we are generally thus forced to render **habēbam** by "I had," we may still *feel* the difference of meaning between it and the perfect **habui**.

VOCABULARY

pōculum , -i, N., <i>cup</i> .	ēbrius , -a, -um, <i>intoxicated,</i>
vinum , -i, N., <i>wine</i> .	<i>drunken.</i>

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque herī nauta in culinā cum agricolā dēfessō sedēbat. 2. Coquus, cum in culinam vēnisset pōculaue magistrī aquā complēvisset, nautae obēsō et agricolae pigrō vinum dedit. Hodiē in viā ēbriī iacēbunt nauta et agricola. Ibi eōs puerī puellaeque vidēbunt.

B. 1. Tum Claudiaē "Cūr sīmia tua in caveam cucurrit?" inquit Iūlia. "Nauta ēbrius per āream iit," inquit Claudia, "eamque terruit; nam in tabernā vinum ēmerat." 2. "Cum in culinā essēmus," inquit coquus, "vulpēculam pulchram in āreā vidimus." "Cūr eam nōn occīdistis?" inquit nauta. "Cucurrimus in āream," inquit coquus; "sed interim ex agrīs agricola cum validīs filiīs vēnerat. Is sagittā vulpēculam occīdit." 3. "In herbā coquī pa-

terās multās invēnimus," inquit Mārcus; "sīmia eās saxō frēgerat."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. I was hiding under the table. There my grandmother found me; for she had filled my school bag with many grapes. 2. And so, when the intoxicated farmer came out of the store, he ran swiftly into the fields. 3. Meanwhile the sailor's strong monkey had broken the farmer's cups and thrown his wine into the water. 4. What did the girls see in the street, my son?

B. 1. "When Marcus and I came to the gate," said Julia, "we sent Quintus into the town to warn the good farmer; for a wolf had come from the woods and was frightening the horses." 2. "Quintus and Claudia were teaching the monkeys," said Marcus; "she was sitting on the doll's table, he was lying in the grass." 3. "The boys have filled the cups with water," said the fat cook to the girls; "soon the dinner will be on the table."

EXERCISE XXX

IRREGULAR VERB

sum

IMPERFECT TENSE INDICATIVE MOOD

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	eram	erāmus
2d person	erās	erātis
3d person	erat	erant

REMARK. English quite lacks a special and exact rendering for the imperfect of this verb, both *fuī* and *eram* being translated by "I was."

VOCABULARY

corvus, -i, M., *raven*.ripa, -ae, F., *bank* (of a stream).domum cucurri, *I ran home*,*I have run home*.rīvus, -i, M., *stream*.

REMARK. The form **domum** may thus be used with any verb of going or sending: *e.g.*, **domum vēnit**, *he came home*; **domum Quintum misi**, *I sent Quintus home*; etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Cum ad rīvum vēnissēmus, liberī saxa multa in aquam iēcērunt; sed mox in herbā cum ancillā sedēbant. 2. Ē lūdō domum celeriter cucurrimus; nam Mārcus et Quintus tum in cymbā erant. 3. Iūlia columbās in gremiō diū tenuit; corvus interim in umerō nautae validi sedēbat. 4. Puerī puellaeque per oppidī portam cucurrerant, ut agricolārum obēsōrum pōcula vinō complērent.

B. 1. "Interim ego et Claudia," inquit Iūlia, "coquī soleās invēnerāmus in culinā cūque dederāmus." "Ubi est eius pecūnia?" inquit Mārcella. 2. "Lupus," inquit agricola, "cum ē spēluncā ērūpisset, ad ripam celeriter cucurrit. Ibi latēbat ursā magna. Ea, cum lupum vīdisset, ē latebris ērūpit, eumque occidit." 3. "Equī nostrī liberōs ex oppidō in silvā vēxerant," inquit Claudia. "Tum per agrōs vēnit Quintus. Mox ancilla eum Mārcumque ad rīvum misit, quia pōcula habēbant. Nōs interim in herbā iacēbāmus."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. And so we had gone into the garden and were filling your baskets, Claudia, with beautiful grapes. 2. When the tired farmer had sent (his) sons into the

town, he sat long on the bank of a small stream. There he saw a raven and killed it with a stone. 3. We are hiding with a fat boy to frighten the teacher. Why is Marcus hiding with you, girls?"

B. 1. "Once we found a little fox on the bank of the stream and threw it into the water," said the sailors to Marcus. "Why did you not give it to me?" asked Quintus. 2. "We saw a drunken sailor in the shade," said Julia; "I ran home, but the boys brought little wolves from the woods so as to frighten him." 3. "When the cook had gone to the stream," said Quintus, "I came into the kitchen. A raven was hiding there under the table, and I threw a plate at him." 4. "Marcella was a good girl to-day," said Claudia; "for she gave the little boys pens because they had found her school bag."

EXERCISE XXXI

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION**habeō**

PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE VOICE

habēre, to have

NOTE. All verbs of the second conjugation form the present infinitive active in this same way.

VOCABULARY

coepi, I began, I have begun.	potui, I could; I was able,
mālui, I preferred, I have preferred.	I have been able.
nōlui, I refused; I did not want; I was unwilling, I have been unwilling.	volui, I wanted, I have wanted; I was willing, I have been willing.

NOTE. Each of the above verbs may govern the present infinitive; e.g., *timēre coepī, I began to be afraid; māluisti sedēre, you preferred to sit; Mārcus voluit equōs vidēre, Marcus wanted to see the horses.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. In silvā lupus validus nōs terruit; itaque ego domum cucurrī, sed Mārcus dēfessus in agris latēre māluit. 2. Claudia corvum miserum in gremiō tenēre nōluerat, et cum pūpis in umbrā iacēbat. 3. In agrō erat rivus pulcher; nam in ripā erant bācae et rosae multae. 4. Ubi fuit herī pōculum nostrum, Quīnte? Nam puellae, cum in āream vēnissent, id voluērunt aquā complēre, sed nōn invēnērunt.

B. 1. "Ubi est Quīntus, puellae?" inquit Mārcella; "nam nautae pigri equus albus in hortō nostrō est. Ego eum terrēre nōn potui." 2. "Coquus ēbrius, cum in oppidō vīnum ēmisset," inquit Mārcus, "nautae dēfessī pōculum complēre nōluit. Itaque is pōculum iēcit in corbulam coquī miserī, eiusque paterās frēgit." 3. Tum Quīntō "Cum in culinā essēmus," inquit puer parvus, "vulpēcula ex agris in āream vēnit, et Iūliae columbās terrēre coepit. Nōs ē culinā ērūpimus; sed vulpēcula celeriter in hortum cucurrit, ut in herbā latēret. Interim avus meus cum sagittis in hortum vēnerat; itaque ibi vulpēcula mala poenās dedit."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Julia's grandmother sent Marcus to see the teacher's boat. *We* preferred to fill our baskets with apples in the garden. 2. You refused to sit with me on the bench. 3. When your monkeys had thrown many grapes and berries into the water, boys, they ran home and

hid in the tent. 4. Then the farmer began to warn the sailor's pretty daughter; for she had refused to teach the poor children. ✓

B. 1. "What did you want to see in the woods yesterday?" said Julia to Marcella. "I wanted to see a bear," replied Marcella. "And so the boys hid in a cave; but they could not frighten me." 2. "Where were the cups and plates?" asked the girls. "The cups were on the bank of the stream," replied Quintus, "and the plates were in the grass with your baskets." 3. "When we had come home through the fields," said Marcus, "Quintus began to fill the girls' school bags with water, and I threw mud into the dolls' cradle. Then my grandfather sent the stout maid to warn us; and so we ran quickly into the woods."

EXERCISE XXXII

IRREGULAR VERB

sum

PRESENT TENSE	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	sim	simus
2d person	sis	sitis
3d person	sit	sint

VOCABULARY

laetus, -a, -um, *pleased, happy.* rapui, *I seized, I have seized;*
 tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.* I stole, I have stolen, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Magister capsās mālis magnīs complet, ut puellae bonae laetae sint. 2. Agricolaē filiī validī ad lūdum cum

Quintō vēnerant ; sed eōs docēre magister nōluit. 3. Mārcus, cum nautae obēsī cymbam pulchram vīdisset, celeriter domum cucurrit ; ego in harēnā sedēre mālui, ut corbulam meam conchis complērem. 4. Iūlia simiam tenet, ut columba tūta sit. Ea nunc in Claudiaē gremiō latet.

B. 1. "Coquus, cum in ripā corvum parvum invēnisset," inquit Claudia, "per agrōs domum iit, corvumque mihi dedit." 2. "Herī cum pueris per silvam ad rīvum iī," inquit Mārcus. "Ibi cum in aquā essēmus, vulpēcula mala ē spēluncā vēnit cēnamque ēdit nostram." 3. "Ubi sunt pōcula?" coquō inquit agricola. "Nautae simia hodiē pōcula multa et vīnum rapuit," inquit coquus ; "itaque nautam ēbrium mox vidēbimus."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The horses ran through the garden, and are now in the yard. 2. The girls are sitting with us in the tent, so that the dolls may be safe. 3. Your grandmother, Julia, sent the fat boy to the store ; meanwhile I began to fill his school bag with sand. 4. And so when we had killed the wolf, we went into the cave. There we found a bear, but could not frighten her with our arrows.

B. 1. "Yesterday, boys, while your tired grandfather was lying in the garden in the shade," said Julia, "he saw a wolf and wanted to frighten it, because his horses were not safe. But a bear ran quickly through the fields, and the wolf hid in the woods." 2. "I am sitting in the yard, my son," said the sailor, "so that you will be a good boy. Yesterday you were lazy ; you did not lead the horse to the stream." 3. "The grapes fell from the poor boys' baskets into the water," said Marcella, "and now they are afraid of the farmer. We will fill their baskets with many apples and berries." 4. "The sailor's

son was happy to-day," said Quintus; "for Marcus had given him an arrow. But to-morrow I shall hide in the woods and frighten him."

EXERCISE XXXIII

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION

habeō

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
	FUTURE PERFECT TENSE		PERFECT TENSE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habuerō	habuerimus	habuerim	habuerimus
2d person	habueris	habueritis	habueris	habueritis
3d person	habuerit	habuerint	habuerit	habuerint

REMARK 1. As an aid to the memory, note that the last syllables of the future perfect indicative forms spell out the future of the verb **sum**, excepting in the third person plural; and that the perfect subjunctive is the same as the future perfect indicative, with the exception of the first person singular and the fact that the **i** is long in three forms.

REMARK 2. The future perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive of verbs of all conjugations are inflected in the same way as **habuerō** and **habuerim**. To find the first person singular for any verb, change the **-i** of the perfect indicative to **-erō** and **-erim**; e.g., **cucurri**, **cucurrerō**, **cucurrerim**; **ii**, **ierō**, **ierim**; **vēni**, **vēnerō**, **vēnerim**; **fuī**, **fuerō**, **fuerim**; etc.

REMARK 3. The future perfect tense refers to a future event completed before another future event; e.g., **Mārcus mox in cymbā erit**; **ego interim ex agris vēnerō**, *Marcus will soon be in the boat; meanwhile I shall have come from the fields.* The perfect subjunctive is used mostly in dependent clauses, in ways to be explained elsewhere.

VOCABULARY

gallina, -ae, F., *hen, chicken.* **ovum**, -i, N., *egg.*
nidus, -i, M., *nest.* **fūrtim**, adverb, *stealthily.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Mārcī sīmia hodiē columbārū nīdum invēnit, ōvaque multa frēgit. **2.** Vulpēcula, cum fūrtim in āream isset, Quīntī gallinās rapuit; interīm Mārcī gallīna alba in caveā tūta erat. **3.** Lūnam stellāsque vidēre volūi, sed Mārcus mēcum in hortō sedēre nōluit. **4.** Ex agrīs vēni, ut coquum ēbrium vidērem. Eum nōn vīdī, sed in āreā agricolae filiōs obēsōs invēni; coquī paterās ē culinā rapuerant.

B. 1. "Ursam videō," inquit Quīntus. "Ubi latēbis, Claudia, ut tūta sis?" "Herī in tabernāculō latuī," inquit Claudia. "Ibi lupus mē vidēre nōn potuit." **2.** "Crās laeta erō," inquit Mārcella; "in silvā tum sedēbimus, et in corbulis erit cēna pulchra." **3.** "In silvam ad rīvum iimus," inquit Mārcus; "cumque ibi in rīpā sedērēmus, nautae validi celeriter vērunt ex oppidō cymbamque nostram rapuerunt. Quīntus domum celeriter cucurrit, ut avum nostrum moneret; ego interim in herbā latuī."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. We have come to see the doves' eggs, Quintus. Where is the nest? **2.** Why did you bring your little fox into the yard, boys? My pretty hens are afraid of it. **3.** We began to be afraid of the drunken sailor; but Marcus gave him money and sent him home. **4.** Meanwhile the bear had gone stealthily from the cave; and so the tired boys did not discover its hiding place.

B. 1. "The farmer came to-day," said Julia, "to fill the stream with stones. Quintus was happy; for he had long wanted to see the farmer's white horses." **2.** "When the boys were hiding in the grass to frighten the girls," said Claudia, "the sailor's lazy son came into the tent and stole your raven's cage, Julia." **3.** "Once upon a time," said Quintus, "a little fox came through the forest to see the farmer's chickens. But the farmer's sons were sitting in the garden; and so they killed the poor little fox."

EXERCISE XXXIV

SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

In summarizing the forms of a verb it is necessary to recognize a standard order of tenses. Thus, the synopsis of **habeō** and **sum** would be arranged as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE MOOD	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
Pres. Tense	habeō sum	habeam sim
Imperf. Tense	habēbam eram	habērem essem
Fut. Tense	habēbō erō	
Perf. Tense	habui fui	habuerim fuerim
Pluperf. Tense	habueram fueram	habuissem fuissem
Fut. Perf. Tense	habuerō fuerō	

It is of the greatest importance that this order of tenses be firmly fixed in the mind, (1) because forms are most readily recalled when they are arranged in a definite order, and (2) because, in taking up a new conjugation, the fixed place for each tense helps to bring out clearly the points of similarity and difference between the new forms and those of the same tenses of conjugations already learned.

The above synopsis gives the first person singular of each tense. Following the same order of tenses, give a synopsis of *habeō* and *sum* in the second person singular, the third person singular, the first person plural, etc. This exercise should be repeated until a synopsis in any person and number can be given without hesitation or mistake.

VOCABULARY

folium, -i, n., *leaf*.

irātus, -a, -um, *angry, en-*
raged, etc.

rāmus, -i, m., *branch*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Itaque puellae bonae columbārum nīdōs foliis complēvērunt. 2. Herī, cum gallīnae in rāmō sedērent, puerī malī iēcērunt saxa, eāsque terruērunt. 3. Crās in rivō cymbam pulchram habēbō, vōsque mēcum in eā sedēbitis. 4. E corbulā coquī, cum is vulpēculam terrēret, ōva in saxa cecidērunt.

B. 1. "Hodiē nauṭae filium domum mīsi," inquit Mārcus. "Tum nauta irātus, cum in hortum nostrum vēnisset, rāmōs frēgit gallīnāsque tuās, Iūlia, occidit." 2. "Cūr in foliis dēfessi iacētis, puerī?" inquit agricola. "Avia vestra in tabernāculō est; coquum ēbrium timet." 3. "Puer piger ex hortō fūrtim in agrōs ierat," inquit Claudia. "Ibi bācās magnās invēnit; sed mox ursae multae vērunt ē silvā, puerumque miserum rapuērunt." 4. "Per viās longās equī agricolam ad oppidum vērunt," inquit Mārcella; "interim eius filiī pigri nautārum cymbam aquā complēbant."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The enraged cook threw eggs at the fat sailor.
2. I am safe; but Quintus has gone into the woods to fill

the baskets with leaves, and there are bears in the caves. 3. When the boys saw the nest of the doves they broke the branch and stole the eggs. 4. Why did you begin to frighten my monkey, Marcus? /

B. 1. "Then your grandmother's strong maid came quickly through the gate of the town, boys," said Julia, "and found the chickens on the bank of a stream." 2. "Marcus went stealthily into the kitchen," said Quintus, "and took a cup. And so we filled it with sand and gave it to the sailor's monkey. The monkey broke the cup, and now the cook is angry." 3. "What did you find under the cook's table, Quintus?" asked Julia. "I did not find my ball," replied Quintus; "but I saw there your school bag and Claudia's pen."

EXERCISE XXXV

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

To conjugate a regular verb, it is necessary to know, in addition to the first person singular of the present indicative, the three following forms: (1) the present infinitive active, (2) the first person singular of the perfect indicative active, and (3) the perfect passive participle; *e.g.*, **vidēō**, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visus**. These four forms are known as the Principal Parts of the verb.

REMARK 1. When once the principal parts are known, all the other forms of a regular verb can easily be found. For example, the present infinitive **vidēre** shows that **vidēō** is of the second conjugation (hence **vidēbam**, **vidēbō**; **videam**, **vidērem**), and from the perfect indicative **vidī** we find **videram**, **viderō**; **viderim**, **vidissem**. The perfect passive participle gives the key to certain passive forms, as will be shown later.

REMARK 2. Many verbs, otherwise regular, lack certain forms and, therefore, show less than four principal parts. So, for example, verbs which because of their meaning are not used in the passive.

Learn the principal parts of the following verbs of the second conjugation :

having been frightened
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus. **compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus.**
So moneō and terreō.
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī. **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus.**
So lateō, teneō, and timeō. **sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessum.**
videō, vidēre, vidī, visus.

VOCABULARY

locus, -i, m. (plural, **loca, idōneus, -ā, -um, suitable.**
-ōrum, n.), place, spot. iam, adverb, now.

REMARK. The use of **iam** ("now") is not altogether the same as that of **nunc**. The latter word refers to the present of the speaker, e.g., **Mārcus nunc in cymbā est**, *Marcus is now in the boat*; but **iam** can equally well be used in speaking of an event that is past, as, **In silvam iam vēnerāmus**, *We had now come into the forest*.

RULE. To mark a question, **-ne** may be added to the first word of a sentence; e.g., **Librūmne vidisti?** *Did you see the book?* **Estisne in hortō, puellae?** *Are you in the garden, girls?*

REMARK 1. Note how the addition of **-ne** causes the accent of the word to which it is joined to shift to the last syllable. Compare the influence of **-cum** and **-que** upon the accent of the words to which they are joined.

REMARK 2. In sentences introduced by **cūr, quid, ubi**, or any other interrogative word, **-ne** must not be used.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Meamne capsam vidistis, pueri? Neri in tabernaculum eam ieci. 2. Puerine in silvam ierunt, Quinte? Locumne idoneum invenerunt? 3. Agricolaе boni equus liberōs in loca tuta vexit. Interim nautae filius in oppidum ierat, ut corbulam sagittis compleret. 4. Voluistine, mi fili, columbarum ova nidumque videre?

B. *A Marauder Punished*

Tum pueris "Olim," inquit Iulia, "lupus malus, cum ē speluncā furtim venisset, per silvam iit in agrōs agricolārum miserōrum, eōrumque equōs occidit. Itaque agricolae irātī ursam albam ē caveā duxerunt in agrōs, et cum eā in herbā latuerunt. Sed lupus iam domum cucurrerat, et in speluncā tūtus iacebat. Itaque agricolae, cum diū in herbā latuissent, cum ursā celeriter ierunt in silvam, ibique lupi latebrās invenerunt. Tum laeti ursam miserunt in speluncam, lupusque malus poenās dedit."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Did my little fox frighten your chickens, Marcus? 2. Why did the angry sailor fill our tent with stones? 3. Are you in the yard, Quintus? We are in the kitchen. 4. What did your grandfather's cook buy in the town, girls? We wanted to see his basket, but he was unwilling.

B. 1. "On the bank of a small stream we found an arrow and a basket," said Marcus. "Quintus broke the arrow with a stone, and I threw the basket into the water. Meanwhile the farmer was filling (his) cup with wine; and so he did not see us." 2. "When I went into the garden yesterday," said Claudia, "I found a suitable place, and

sat for a long time in the shade. Then the boys came home from school, and began to frighten your raven, Julia. And so I ran into the yard to warn your grandfather."

EXERCISE XXXVI

THE FIRST OR *Ā*-CONJUGATION

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, call, summon

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocō	vocāmus	vocem	vocēmus
2d person	vocās	vocātis	vocēs	vocētis
3d person	vocat	vocant	vocet	vocent

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocābam	vocābāmus	vocārem	vocārēmus
2d person	vocābās	vocābātis	vocārēs	vocārētis
3d person	vocābat	vocābant	vocāret	vocārent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocābō	vocābimus
2d person	vocābis	vocābitis
3d person	vocābit	vocābunt

REMARK. The above forms can easily be memorized by comparing them with the corresponding forms of *habēō*. Thus, in the imperfect indicative and subjunctive, and in the future indicative, the formation of the two conjugations is very similar, the only difference being that *habēō* has *ē* and *vocō* has *ā* in the second syllable of each form. For purposes of comparison, it may be

found convenient here and elsewhere to consult the Summary of Forms, page 204 ff.

NOTE. The perfect indicative *vocāvī* is given above among the principal parts of the verb. With this as a base, give a synopsis of *vocō* in the first person singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

VOCABULARY

dō, dare, dedi, datus, give (see *properō, properāre, properāvī, Summary of Forms, p. 218*). *properātum, hurry, hasten.*

REMARK. Wherever the principal parts of a verb are given in full, it is customary (as in this Exercise) to state the meaning of the verb in the most general terms, without attempting to translate exactly any one of the principal parts. From the general definition the meaning of any particular form can easily be derived.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. *Puerōs vocābimus, ut corvum meum videant.*
 2. *Misistisne Mārcum dēfessum, cum ē lūdō vēnisset, ut agricolam vocāret?* 3. *Cūr ad cymbam isti? ut nautae obēsō librum darēs?* 4. *Estne Mārcus in agris? Quīntus in āreā est; nam nautae filiō gallinam dat.*

B. *The Fox and the Chickens*

"Herī," inquit Mārcus, "avus meus cum agricolīs validīs in silvam iit, ut spēluncās latebrāsque ursārū vidēret. Ibi cum sedēret in foliīs, vulpēcula fūrtim ē silvā in agrōs vēnit, et celeriter cucurrit in hortum nostrum gallināsque multās rapuit. Interim agricolae ursārū spēluncās invēnerant; itaque avum meum vocābant. Sed iam in silvam vēnerat Quīntus, ut avum agricolāsque vocāret, quia vulpēcula gallinās rapuerat. Itaque avus irātus domum properāvit; sed nautae filius iam vulpēculam occiderat."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Did the boys hurry to a suitable place? Did they eat berries in the woods? 2. What are you giving to the raven, Quintus? I gave him an apple to-day. 3. Are the girls calling me to see the doll's chair? I saw it yesterday. 4. Is Marcus glad because the farmer's lazy son did not break the doves' eggs? /

B. 1. "To-morrow," said Julia, "we will hurry from school and fill our baskets with berries." 2. "Why are you in the yard, girls?" asked Claudia. "We are calling the boys," replied the girls. "But they are in the fields; and so they do not see us." 3. "The farmer gave me a basket," said Marcus, "and went with me to the boat. The sailor's sons could not give us his beautiful shells, but I found many in the sand."

EXERCISE XXXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

CONSONANT STEMS

flōs, M., *flower* *arbor*, F., *tree* *litus*, N., *shore*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>flōs</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arbor</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litus</i>	<i>litora</i>
Gen.	<i>flōris</i>	<i>flōrum</i>	<i>arboris</i>	<i>arborum</i>	<i>litoris</i>	<i>litorum</i>
Dat.	<i>flōri</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arbori</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litōri</i>	<i>litoribus</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrem</i>	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborem</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litus</i>	<i>litora</i>
Abl.	<i>flōre</i>	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arbore</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litore</i>	<i>litoribus</i>

REMARK I. Nouns of this declension vary widely in the form of the nominative singular, but the genitive always ends in *-is*, as in the above examples.

REMARK 2. Note that here (as in all other declensions) the accusative case of a neuter noun is the same as the nominative, both in the singular and in the plural.

Gender. There is no simple rule for the gender of nouns of the third declension, and it is therefore necessary to learn the gender of each word as it is taken up.

When the above forms have been memorized, test your recollection of them by declining together *flōs pulcher*, *arbor magna*, *litus tūtum*, etc.

VOCABULARY

*habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, perterritus, -a, -um, much
habitātum, live, dwell. frightened, thoroughly
ēscendī, I climbed (up), I alarmed, etc.
have climbed (up). subitō, adverb, suddenly,
without warning, etc.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English: ✕

A. 1. Iitne Quintus in agrōs ut puellās vocāret, ut flōrēs pulchrōs vidērent? 2. Nauta ēbrius, cum ē tabernā vēnisset, pōcula paterāsque frēgit. 3. Agricolaē multī in agrīs habitant, multī in litore. 4. Equōs iam viderāmus, et ego ad tabernam properābam.

B. The Picnic

"Ad locum idōneum cum vēnissēmus," inquit Iūlia, "puellae dēfessae in herbā sēdērunt, sed Mārcus et Quintus ad rīvum parvum properāvērunt. Nam in rīpā erat arbor magna, et nidus in rāmō. Mārcus celeriter in arborem ēscendit, ut ōva vidēret; sed cum in rāmō laetus sedēret, subitō ē spēluncā ērūpit simia obēsa et ad arborem cucurrit. Itaque Quintus perterritus ē rīpā cecidit in aquam:

et Mārcus, cum simia in arborem ēscendisset, in foliis latēre coepit; sed puer miser mox rārum frēgit, et ad terram in saxa cecidit."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Are there apples on the tree? Do you see berries in the garden? 2. Why were the sailors living with you, boys? 3. When the farmer had come to the shore to call the sailors, he saw a wolf in the boat. 4. Suddenly the little fox ran from the tent into the garden; there Marcus' doves, much alarmed, began to hide in the branches of the trees.

B. 1. "We did not want to give money to many children," said Julia; "I preferred to fill their baskets with apples and grapes." 2. "And so," said Marcus, "we had now frightened the bear. But soon many wolves came from the forest; and so we hurried home to call the farmer's strong sons. Then, when the farmer had come with arrows, we killed the wolves and bear." 3. "Quintus will live in the town," said Claudia; "*we* shall live in the fields."

EXERCISE XXXVIII

CARDINAL NUMERALS

duo, duae, duo, *two*

trēs, trēs, tria, *three*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
	duōs			trīs	trīs	
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

VOCABULARY

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, cēteri, -ae, -a, *the other.*
 adiūtus, *help.* fūgi, *I ran away, I have run*
 collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, *away; I fled, I have fled.*
 collocātus, *place, put.*

REMARK. The verb collocō is used with *in* and the *ablative* case. This fact must be kept carefully in mind, because the not uncommon translation "put (into)" suggests a different construction.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Cum agricolārum equī validī corbulās ad litus vēxissent, nautae duās in cymbā collocāvērunt. 2. Quintus mē adiūvit; nam puerī cēteri iam in silvam fūgerant. 3. Vobiscum ad litus properābō, ut nautās dēfessōs adiuvēmus. 4. In arboribus erant corvī multī; itaque puellās cēterās vocāvimus, ut nidōs vidērent.

B. *Playing on the Shore*

"Itaque," inquit Mārcus, "ex agris vēnerāmus, et iam sedēbāmus in harēnā. Tum subitō cymbam parvam in litore vidimus. In eā puellās trēs collocāvī, sed cēteri liberī cucurrērunt ad oppidum, ut nautam vocārent. Interim ego cum puellis in cymbā sēdī; cumque diū conchās in aquam iēcissēmus, cymbam lutō complēvī. Sed iam ex oppidō nauta irātus properābat. Ego eum nōn timēbam, sed puellae perterritae erant. Itaque celeriter mēcum fūgerunt in hortum, ibique sub arboribus parvis latuimus."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. I am putting flowers in suitable places. Soon I shall call the girls to help me. 2. We lived in the town

for a long time ; but my grandfather preferred to live in the fields. Do you see the beautiful trees in our garden ?

3. Three boys came to school to-day. To-morrow the others will be punished ; for the teacher was angry because they had run away to the shore.

B. I. "The raven was now much frightened," said Julia ; "and so Quintus climbed up into the tree to help him. But in the meantime Marcus threw two stones at the bad monkey and killed it." 2. "Are you hurrying to school, girls?" asked Claudia. "I will give you beautiful flowers to put in your school bags." 3. "Two little foxes came stealthily from the cave," said Marcus, "because they had seen chickens in our garden. But I had put the chickens in a safe place ; and so the little foxes could not frighten them."

EXERCISE XXXIX

IRREGULAR VERB

eō, ire, il, itum, go

INDICATIVE MOOD			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
PRESENT TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
2d person	<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
3d person	<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>irem</i>	<i>irēmus</i>
2d person	<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>irēs</i>	<i>irētis</i>
3d person	<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibant</i>	<i>iret</i>	<i>irent</i>

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	ibō	ibimus
2d person	ibis	ibitis
3d person	ibit	ibunt

REMARK 1. As an aid to the memory, note that the endings of the imperfect and future indicative of this verb are identical with those of the corresponding tenses of *vocō* and *habeō*; and compare the present subjunctive of *eō* with that of *habeō*.

REMARK 2. The imperfect subjunctive of any verb, regular or irregular, can be found by adding *m* to the present infinitive active; note above *īre* and *īrem*.

Using as a basis the perfect indicative *ii*, give a synopsis of *eō* in the second person singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

VOCABULARY

autem, conjunction, *however*, *altus*, -a, -um, *tall*, *high*.
but, *moreover*.

NOTE. The conjunction *autem* is a postpositive word; *i.e.*, it does not stand first in its sentence. Usually it is found in second place; *e.g.*, *Mārcus autem ad litus ierat*, *Marcus, however, had gone to the shore*.

MODEL SENTENCE

Ad litus eāmus, Let's go to the shore.

RULE. *The first person plural of the present subjunctive is used in urging or inviting the hearer to join the speaker in doing something. This use is known as the Hortatory Subjunctive.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Properēmus in agrōs, agricolāsque miserōs adiuvēmus. 2. Hodiē, cum ad lūdum irēmus, puella pulchra nōbīs ūvās multās dedit. 3. Herī cum pueris tribus Mārcus in agrōs iit, ut nīdōs columbārum miserārum in rāmīs arborum altārum collocāret. 4. Ancilla nostra, cum lupōs duōs in silvā vīdisset, domum perterrita fūgit.

B. The Wolf and the Raven

Multae arborēs altae in silvā nostrā sunt, flōrēsque multi et pulchrī. Ōlim in silvam puella parva vēnerat, corbulamque flōribus laeta complēbat. ' Subitō autem ē spēluncā ērūpit lupus malus ; tum puella perterrita per silvam cucurrit. Sed in arbore altā habitābat corvus. Is, cum lupum puellamque vīdisset, subitō "Ubi sunt sagittae meae?" inquit. Itaque lupus malus ad latebrās perterritus fūgit ; puella autem multis cum flōribus pulchris domum properāvit, eōsque liberis cēteris dedit.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Let's give arrows to the boys, and dolls to the girls. 2. Two boys were lying on the bank ; we called them, however, to go with us to the shore. 3. We shall go to the woods to-day to put the little foxes in the cave. 4. When Marcus had found a suitable spot, he climbed into a tree to call the other children.

B. 1. "Let's put two dolls in the cradle," said Marcella to Claudia. 2. "Why did you want to put the dolls in the cradle?" asked Marcus. "Let's frighten the monkey with them." 3. "I saw three little foxes in the field to-day," said Quintus, "and I have brought two home. Let's put them in the raven's cage." 4. "Let's fill the girls'

baskets with flowers," said Julia. "They have gone to the stream with the boys, and soon they will go home."

EXERCISE XL

IRREGULAR VERB

possum, posse, potui, *be able, can, etc.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
2d person	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
3d person	potest	possunt	possit	possint

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
2d person	poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
3d person	poterat	poterant	posset	possent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	poterō	poterimus
2d person	poteris	poteritis
3d person	poterit	poterunt

REMARK. This verb is a compound of **pote** and **sum**. In the composition, **pote** is often somewhat disguised, but the forms of **sum** suffer little change ; (for the full principal parts of **sum**, see the following Vocabulary).

With the perfect indicative **potui** as a basis, give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses.

VOCABULARY

sum, esse, fui, be.

enim, conjunction, for.

NOTE. The conjunction **enim** (unlike **nam**) is a postpositive word ; e.g., *Lupus enim in speluncam fugerat, For the wolf had fled into the cave.* Compare the note on **autem** in the preceding Exercise.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. In umbrā sedeāmus. 2. Potesne liberōs cēterōs vidēre? Euntne ad rīvum? 3. In agrōs imus, ut agricolās bonōs adiuvēmus. 4. Mox Quīntum vidī; eius enim avus tum ibi habitābat. 5. Properāveram in hortum, ut puellās vocārem, ut eīs bācās darem. Sed eae iam ex hortō in silvam ierant; itaque puer obēsus bācās ēdit.

B. *A Disturbed School Session*

Mārcus, cum ē lūdō domum vēnisset, Quīntō "Hodiē," inquit, "in lūdum lupum parvum et sīmiam dūximus. Ego locum idōneum sub subselliīs invēnī, ibique lupum collocāvī; sīmiam autem puerī cēterī in magistrī sellā collocāvērunt. Magister, cum sīmiam vidisset, tabulam in eam iēcit. Tum subito lupus ē latebrīs ērūpit, magisterque perterritus fugit in āream et in arborem altam celeriter ēscendit. Interim puerī multī fūrtim ē lūdō per agrōs in silvam cucurrērunt. Sed crās poenās dabunt; magister enim irātus est."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. I did not want to be a farmer; and so my grandfather sent me to school. 2. Can they help you? I could not help the other girls. 3. Let's call the strong farmer, Marcus. 4. I went with two boys to put the

bear in (its) cage. 5. There are three large stones in the road. Are you able to put them on the horse's back, boys?

B. 1. "The drunken sailor's son and daughter cannot go to school," said Julia. "However, they have two books, and we shall help them." × 2. "A little fox stole my three chickens to-day," said Claudia; "for the farmer had gone to town. But when his sons came home, they hurried to the forest, and killed the little fox in (its) hiding place." 3. "I shall go to the shore to-day," said Marcus. "Quintus, however, preferred to call the other boys and go with them into the fields."

EXERCISE XLI

VOCABULARY

frāter, -tris, M., *brother*.

soror, -ōris, F., *sister*.

māter, -tris, F., *mother*.

villa, -ae, F., *farmhouse*.

pater, -tris, M., *father*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Voluistine magister esse? liberōs docēre potes?
2. Frāter dēfessus mēcum ad litus ire nōluit; pater autem in agrōs mē dūxit, ut florēs vidērem. 3. Mātre[m] meam et sorōrem puerī malī sagittis herī terruērunt. 4. Mārcus pueris pecūniam dabit. Nōs autem ūvās et bācās multās puellis dedimus.

B. A Tricky Wolf

"In silvā," inquit Claudia, "habitābat puella parva. Ōlim māter eam cum corbulā ad aviae villam per silvam mīsīt. Interim lūpus ē latebrīs vēnerat puellamque vidit;

itaque celeriter cucurrit ad villam, cumque aviam miseram ēdisset, in lectō latuit. Puella iam laeta flōribus corbulam complēbat. Sed cum vēnisset in villam lupumque vidisset in lectō, tum perterrita agricolās validōs vocāvit; multōs enim in silvā viderat. Itaque eī cucurrerunt ad villam lupumque malum occidērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Your father, Quintus, is giving two eggs to my sister; I, however, shall not be able to give you a nest. 2. Their brother will go with you; for there are wolves in the woods. 3. My mother and grandmother were going quickly through the fields to call the girls. 4. You will be able to help us, boys; for my brothers are filling the stream with stones to-day. 5. I had come to the shore, and was sitting on the rocks; for Quintus had refused to go with us to the woods.

B. 1. "I found a little dove in the road yesterday," said Marcella. "Let's put it on a branch of the tree with the other doves." 2. "I wanted to be able to help the boys, and go with them into the sailor's boat," said Julia; "but my sister sent me to the farmhouse to sit with (my) grandmother." 3. "We put the cups on the table," said Quintus, "and the cook filled them with wine. But the monkey suddenly rushed out from the cage and threw the cups to the ground, and broke three. Are the plates safe, Marcus?" 4. "My father cannot see the boat on the shore," said Claudia. "Let's call the sailors to help him."

EXERCISE XLII

THE THIRD DECLENSION

I-STEMS

*ignis, M., fire**vallēs, F., valley**mare, N., sea*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>
Gen.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>vallium</i>	<i>maris</i>	—
Dat.	<i>igni</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>valli</i>	<i>vallibus</i>	<i>marī</i>	—
Acc.	<i>ignem</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>vallem</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>
		<i>ignēs</i>		<i>vallēs</i>		
Abl.	<i>igni,</i> <i>igne</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>valle</i>	<i>vallibus</i>	<i>marī,</i>	—

NOTE. The following classes of third declension nouns belong to the I-stems:

(1) Masculines and feminines in *-is* and feminines in *-ēs* which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (as *ignis, ignis*; *vallēs, vallis*).

(2) Neuters in *-e, -al, -ar*.

REMARK 1. The most important difference between consonant and I-stems is that the latter have *-ium* (instead of *-um*) in the genitive plural, and that neuter I-stems have *-ia* (instead of *-a*) in the nominative and accusative plural. Note also that *-is* is the preferred ending for the accusative plural of masculines and feminines; and that there is considerable variation in the ending of the ablative singular. The forms of this latter case are best learned by becoming personally acquainted with each noun.

REMARK 2. The blanks in the plural of *mare* mean simply that certain cases of this noun are not in common use. The word is here chosen as a model because it is the most completely inflected neuter I-stem employed in this book. (In the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, fully inflected neuter I-stems show the same endings as masculines and feminines.)

VOCABULARY

collis, -is (abl. -e), *m., hill.*vehementer, adverb, *very,*piscis, -is (abl. -e), *m., fish.**much, exceedingly.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Meusne pater librum tuum in ignem iēcit?
 2. In marī piscis magnōs vidēre possum. Potesne tū eōs vidēre? 3. In collibus sunt villae multae. 4. Per vālem ad rīvum eāmus. 5. Puer piger, cum pater eum in agrōs mīsisset, ad litus cum frātribus iit, ut sorōris meae cymbam vidēret.

B. *A Thief Routed*

Iūlia, cum in umbrā sedēret; cēteris puellis "Herī," inquit, "Mārcus cum pueris multis per collēs in vālem iit; nam in valle rīvus pulcher est. Cum autem ibi iacērent in rīpā, ut piscis vidērent, lupus magnus ē spēluncā vēnit, eōrumque cēnam fūrtim rapuit. Sed Mārcus id viderat, et iam irātus puerōs cēterōs ad lupī spēluncam vocāvit; cumque in eam rāmōs et folia iēcissent lupumque ignī terrērent, is subitō ērūpit ē latebris, et in silvam celeriter fūgit. Lupī enim ignīs vehementer timent."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. My mother is afraid of the sea. My brother and sisters, however, are in the boat. 2. And so they will go quickly through the valley; for there are many bears in the woods. 3. Was the farmer able to help the poor sailor? I called my father to help him. But my brothers were then putting a bear into the cage; and so (my) father could not go into the fields.

B. 1. "The sailors now threw the fish into the sea," said Marcus; "for the farmers had refused to fill their baskets with apples." 2. "I began to be much afraid," said Claudia to the boys. "For there was an intoxicated sailor in the yard, and my father had gone into the hills to give money to the farmers." 3. "Let's hurry into the kitchen, Marcus," said Quintus. "Two little foxes have come into the garden, and we will frighten them with fire."

EXERCISE XLIII

THE THIRD OR Ë-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus, send

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	mittō	mittimus	mittam	mittāmus
2d person	mittis	mittitis	mittās	mittātis
3d person	mittit	mittunt	mittat	mittant

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	mittēbam	mittēbāmus	mitterem	mitterēmus
2d person	mittēbās	mittēbātis	mitterēs	mitterētis
3d person	mittēbat	mittēbant	mitteret	mitterent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	mittam	mittēmus
2d person	mittēs	mittētis
3d person	mittet	mittent

REMARK. Observe that, except in the imperfect indicative, the above forms of the third conjugation are more or less unlike the corresponding forms of the first and second conjugations. Note particularly that in the imperfect subjunctive the first *e* of the ending is short, and contrast the corresponding *ē* of the imperfect subjunctive of the second conjugation (as seen in *habērem*, etc.).

The perfect tenses of the following verbs are already familiar. Learn now the principal parts :

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, fall.

currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, run.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead, bring.

edō, ēsse (edere), ēdī, ēsus, eat; see Summary of Forms, page 219.

emō, emere, ēmi, emptus, buy.

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpi, ēruptum, rush (out), burst forth.

ēscendō, ēscendere, ēscendī, ēscēsum, climb (up).

frangō, frangere, frēgi, frāctus, break.

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, kill.

vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus, carry.

REMARK. Note that the present infinitive of the third conjugation ends in *-ere*, an ending which must be distinguished carefully from the corresponding *-ēre* of the second conjugation.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Mārci frāter columbārum ōva saxīs frangere voluit; sed pater eum in agrōs misit, ut equōs dēfessōs ad aquam dūceret. 2. In tabernam tum ibāmus, ut bācās ūvāsque emerēmus. 3. Ad villam cum sorōribus curāmus. Ubi puerī latuērunt? 4. Potuēruntne puerī piscīs emere? Nōs in hortum currere māluimus; ibi enim māla ex arboribus in terram cadēbant.

B. The Generous Bear

Ōlim Mārcus et Quīntus ē villā vērunt ad litus, et in harēnā multōs piscēs magnōs invērunt. Eōs pueri in corbulās iēcērunt duās, domumque properāre coepērunt. Cū autem per silvam magnam irent, ursā alba piscēs vīdit, lupōque "Piscēs videō," inquit; "puerōs terreāmus." Itaque lupus subitō ex arborum umbrā ērūpit. Tum corbulae cum piscibus pulchris cecidērunt in terram, puerique per vallem perterriti cucurrērunt. Interim ursā piscis rapuit, cūque eōs ēdisset, corbulās lupō dedit. Is autem irātus in spēluncam cucurrit, ibique parvās ursās trēs occidit.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The fire was now falling into the leaves; and so the sailor ran through the valley to warn the farmers. 2. When the boys were bringing the little wolf from the hills to the boat, the other wolves rushed out of (their) hiding places and fled through the forest; for they were exceedingly afraid of the arrows of the farmers. 3. The cook was buying plates at the store; for the monkey had broken many.

B. 1. "Let's bring the horses to the shore," said Marcus, "and send them into the sea." 2. "I have brought a strong horse to carry my stout sister to town," said Quintus; "but I cannot put her upon him." 3. "Let's eat (our) berries in the shade," said Julia. "The boys wanted to come with me to the farmhouse, but I refused. And so they ran into the woods and began to climb up into a tall tree to kill a raven. Soon they will be punished."

EXERCISE XLIV

IRREGULAR VERB

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, carry, bear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD		
PRESENT TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	ferō	ferimus	feram	ferāmus
2d person	fers	fertis	ferās	ferātis
3d person	fert	ferunt	ferat	ferant
IMPERFECT TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferrem	ferrēmus
2d person	ferēbās	ferēbātis	ferrēs	ferrētis
3d person	ferēbat	ferēbant	ferret	ferrent
FUTURE TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		
1st person	feram	ferēmus		
2d person	ferēs	ferētis		
3d person	feret	ferent		

REMARK. Aside from the principal parts, **ferō** is not specially irregular. In general its inflection follows that of **mittō**; but note the peculiarity of the imperfect subjunctive **ferrem** (compare **ferre**), and observe that in the present indicative several forms have suffered the loss of a short vowel.

VOCABULARY

trānseō, trānsire, trānsil, saepe, adverb, often.
trānsitus, cross (over), go
over.

REMARK. Note that *trānseō* is a compound of the irregular verb *eō*, whose conjugation it follows.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. *Mārcus ex agris vēnerat, ut mēnsam ad ripam ferret; ibi enim puellae cēnam in corbulis habēbant.* 2. *Puellae malae corvī caveam in aquam iēcērunt; saxis eam frangāmus.* 3. *Ego tum ē latebris ērumpere rivum-que trānsire volui; frāter autem nōluit, quia nautās ēbriōs in spēluncā viderat.* 4. *Ursāsne occidere potestis, puerī? Ubi sunt sagittae vestrae?*

B. *The Playful Monkey*

"In āreā hodiē sedeāmus," *Mārcō* ōlim inquit *Iūlia*. *Mārcus* autem in hortum ire māluit, ut agricolae filium vocāret, cumque eō in silvam properāvit. Itaque mox ibi sub arboribus in umbrā puerī iacēbant. In silvā habitābat simia alba. Ea, cum puerōs vīdisset, fūrtim in arborem altam ēscendit, rāmōsque parvōs in eōs iēcīt. Eī autem irātī saxa magna iēcērunt in arborem, simiamque occidērunt miseram. Tum perterriti fūgērunt; simiās enim cēteras vehementer timēbant. *Mārcus* ad litus properāvit; agricolae autem filius domum cucurrit, et sub lectō latuit.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Why do the farmers often carry branches from the woods to the shore? 2. Yesterday a little fox stealthily crossed the stream and came into the yard to eat the fish tails; for the cook had thrown them into a basket. 3. We are climbing into the tree to kill the raven. 4. Were you then going to the store to buy eggs and grapes?

B. 1. "Quintus is carrying the school bags," said Claudia. "Are *you* carrying the tablets, Marcus?" 2. "We will carry the other chairs, girls," said Marcus. "I wanted to carry three, but my brothers have come from the boat to help me." 3. "You often carry the raven to school, boys," said Marcella. "Do the children give it grapes and berries?" 4. "The big baskets are in the kitchen, Quintus," said Julia. "Have you come to carry them?"

EXERCISE XLV

VOCABULARY

insula, -ae, F., *island*.

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōn-

hōra, -ae, F., *hour*.

sūmpti, cōnsumptus, *use*

nāvis, -is (abl. -i and -e), F.,

up, destroy.

ship.

MODEL SENTENCE

Agricolae in umbrā hōrās duās sēdērunt, The farmers sat in the shade two hours.

RULE. *The accusative case is used to express Extent of Time or Space.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Nāves mare ad insulam trānsiērunt; ibi autem agricolae eās igni cōnsūmpsērunt. 2. Cum per collis hōrās trīs fūgissēmus, in vallem vēnimus, et in villā latuimus. 3. Nam pater saepe nōs vocat, ut saxa ex agris ferāmus. 4. Tum nautae, vehementer irātī quia simia ē nāvi in mare ceciderat, puerōs vocāvērunt, ut simiam cymbā adiuvārent.



NĀVIS

Roman ships of war carried sails, but relied more upon their oars. The larger vessels often had three or four sets of oars, each set placed a little higher than the last, and all worked together. Such a ship could carry several hundreds of people. The ancient artist who designed the figure of a war vessel shown above made no attempt to preserve a proper proportion between the size of the ship and the size of the men upon it.

B. An Adventure in the Woods

"Ōlim," inquit avus noster, "Mārcus cum pueris duōbus in silvam iit, ut corvōs sagittis occideret. Cum autem ibi rivum parvum laetī trānsirent, subitō ex arbore altā ōva multa in eōs cecidērunt; simiae enim viderant puerōs, ōvaque ē corvōrum nīdis rapuerant. Itaque puerī irātī sagittās in arborem mittere coepērunt. Sed interim ē nāvi in silvam vēnerant nautae ēbrii. Eōs cum vidissent, puerī iēcērunt sagittās in aquam, celeriterque ad lītus fūgērunt. Ibi invēnērunt nautārum cymbam, et in insulam parvam trānsiērunt. Itaque nautae, cum ē silvā vēnissent, puerōs occidere voluērunt; sed eī iam in insulā tūtī sedēbant."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. We shall send the farmer to bring the horses from the valley. 2. Did the strong boys carry the boat from the sea into the field? 3. Why are you lying many hours in the tent? 4. We had now used up our wine. For the stout sailors had come from the ship, and had sat long in the farmhouse.

B. 1. "We ran to the shore to cross over to the island," said Marcus; "but the sailors had stolen our boat. You can see their ship on the sea now." 2. "My father was exceedingly angry," said Quintus; "for my brothers had carried the fish from the boat and thrown them into the bears' cage." 3. "You will go to town to-morrow, Quintus," said the girls. "In the meantime we shall carry the grapes to the farmhouse and put the baskets in the tent." 4. "I saw large fires in the woods to-day," said the farmer. "Soon there will be many bears and wolves in the fields; for they will be afraid of the fire."

EXERCISE XLVI

IRREGULAR VERB

volō, velle, volui, wish, be willing, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	volō	volumus	velim	velimus
2d person	vis	vultis	velis	velitis
3d person	vult	volunt	velit	velint

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	volēbam	volēbāmus	vellem	vellēmus
2d person	volēbās	volēbātis	vellēs	vellētis
3d person	volēbat	volēbant	vellet	vellent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	volam	volēmus
2d person	volēs	volētis
3d person	volet	volent

REMARK. Note that the imperfect and future indicative of this verb conform to the third conjugation; also that the endings of the present subjunctive are like those of *sim, sis, sit, etc.*

VOCABULARY

canis, -is, M. and F., dog. *quoque, postpositive adverb*
milia (-ium, N.) passuum, *and conjunction, also, too.*
miles. *vēnātor, -ōris, M., hunter.*
pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few.

REMARK 1. Contrary to the rule, *canis* is not an I-stem.

REMARK 2. The words *milia passuum* mean literally "thousands of paces." In this phrase, *passuum* of course remains everywhere unchanged; but *milia* is declined in the way above indicated.

NOTE. The rule for the expression of Extent of Time and Space was stated in the last Exercise. An example was there given of Extent of Time; the following sentence illustrates Extent of Space: *Duo milia passuum pueri vēnerant, The boys had come two miles.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Visne cum vēnātōre per silvam ire, Quinte? 2. Agricola ad insulam properāre volent; cūr eōs nōn monēs? 3. Vēnātor multa milia passuum properāverat, ut agricolās dēfessōs adiuvāret. 4. Vōs nāvem ignī cōnsūmere vultis. Quid nautae volunt?

B. *The Hunters Hunted*

"Heri," inquit agricola, "vēnātōrēs, cum ex oppidō tria milia passuum īssent per silvam, iamque ad spēluncam vēnissent, ursās ignī terrēre nōn potuerunt; itaque canēs in spēluncam misērunt. Tum ursae vehementer irātae subitō ērūpērunt ē latebris, vēnātōrēsque in arborēs celeriter ēscendērunt. Cum autem ursae quoque ēscendere vellent, tum vēnātōrēs ad rāmōs parvōs perterriti properāvērunt. Sed ursae, cum in arborēs ēscendissent, frēgērunt rāmōs, cumque vēnātōribus miseris in terram cecidērunt. Ibi cum ursae canēs occiderent, vēnātōrēs per silvam celeriter domum fūgērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. What are you carrying, Quintus? 2. I, too, want to go to the farmhouse. 3. However, we often crossed the stream to sit for a few hours in the forest. 4. What will you give, farmers, to be able to frighten the bears and wolves? 5. (Our) father wants to buy fields and live in the valley; but *we* want to live on the island. 6. Are you willing to sit with us?

B. 1. "Let's bring the bear into the yard and frighten the children," said Marcus. "The farmer has gone to town to buy baskets; and so we can now bring her from the cage." **2.** "A few sailors had come from the ship and were placing baskets on the shore," said Julia. "Meanwhile the boys were carrying branches and leaves from the woods; for (their) mother had sent them to help the sailors." **3.** "The hunter, too, now came with (his) dogs," said Quintus; "for the farmer had not been able to kill the bear."

EXERCISE XLVII

IRREGULAR VERBS

mālō, mālī, mālui, *prefer*

nōlō, nōllē, nōlui, *be unwilling, not wish, refuse*

These verbs are compounds of **volō**, and in the main agree with it in conjugation, as the following synopsis will show:

mālō	mālim	nōlō	nōlim
mālēbam	māllem	nōlēbam	nōllem
[mālam]		[nōlam]	
mālui	māluerim	nōlui	nōluerim
mālueram	māluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem
māluerō		nōluerō	

In the present indicative, however, both **mālō** and **nōlō** are quite irregular, the inflection being as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
mālō	mālumus	nōlō	nōlumus
māvis	māvultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis
māvult	mālunt	nōn vult	nōlunt

REMARK. In the synopsis above, the forms **mālam** and **nōlam** are put in square brackets because they are not in common use. Except for the first person singular, however, the future tense of both verbs is normal.

VOCABULARY

CARDINAL NUMERALS

quattuor, <i>four.</i>	septem, <i>seven.</i>	novem, <i>nine.</i>
quinque, <i>five.</i>	octō, <i>eight.</i>	decem, <i>ten.</i>
sex, <i>six.</i>		

NOTE. The cardinal numerals above given are indeclinable ; *i.e.*, they are used without change of form, no matter what the case of the noun they modify.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Vēnātōrēs in agrōs ire mālunt, ut lupōs occīdant.
 2. Canēs iam septem milia passuum per vallem vēnerant. Ursae enim ē collibus in vallem fūgerant. 3. Nōs quoque nōlumus ex insulā fugere; nautae autem volunt. 4. Cum agricolae villam igni cōsumere nōllent, cūr tū ignem ē culinā tulistī?

B. A Timely Rescue

"Ōlim," inquit puer obēsus, "magister cum librīs milia passuum pauca in silvam properāvit; cumque ad locum idōneum vēnisset ibique in foliīs hōrās duās sēdisset, subitō timēre coepit, quia in arborum umbrā lupōs magnōs vidēbat; nam lupī agricolās ibi saepe occīderant. Itaque magister perterritus domum properāre volēbat; cum autem per silvam fūrtim ire coepisset, lupī quoque ē latebrīs vēnērunt. Magister iam currēbat; cumque rīvum trānsiret, in aquam cecidit. Tum autem subitō vēnātor cum canibus ad ripam vēnit, lupique in spēluncās fūgērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Do you want to see the boat, boys? The sailors are carrying it into the sea. 2. The farmers have come ten miles through the fields to the shore. Will the sailors give them fish? 3. Do you prefer to buy a doll, Claudia? 4. Marcus does not want to go to the store with you. 5. The little foxes had come stealthily from the woods to eat your sister's four chickens, Quintus.

B. 1. "On the ship," said the boy, "are six sailors and eight farmers. The sailors want to send the farmers into the small boat; but they (the farmers) do not wish to cross over to the island." 2. "I want to frighten my mother," said Quintus. "Let's fall into the water." 3. "We, too, have a few fish," said Julia; "for the sailors came to the farmhouse yesterday. They gave us fish; *we* gave them grapes and berries." 4. "Let's put five baskets in the tent, and the others in the kitchen," said Marcus.

EXERCISE XLVIII *no verb*

THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION (continued)

Certain verbs of which the first person singular of the present indicative ends in -iō belong to this conjugation. These verbs are in the main regular; but in some forms the i disappears before a following vowel.

rapīō, rapere, rapui, raptus, seize, steal

INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
PRESENT TENSE			
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person rapīō	rapimus	rapiam	rapīāmus
2d person rapis	rapitis	rapīās	rapīātis
3d person rapit	rapiunt	rapiat	rapiant

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	rapiebam	rapiebāmus	raperem	raperēmus
2d person	rapiebās	rapiebātis	raperēs	raperētis
3d person	rapiebat	rapiebant	raperet	raperent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	rapiam	raplēmus
2d person	rapies	raplētis
3d person	rapiet	rapient

The perfect tenses of the following verbs are already familiar. Learn now the principal parts:

fuglō, fugere, fūgī, *run away, flee.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw.*

VOCABULARY

annus, -i, M., <i>year.</i>	ita, adverb, <i>thus, so, in this way.</i>
avis, -is (abl. -e and -i), F., <i>bird.</i>	humī, <i>on the ground.</i>
	neque (or nec), <i>and . . . not.</i>

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Avus noster et avia multōs annōs in valle habitāvērunt. Saepe ad villam imus, ut cum eis sub arboribus sedeāmus. 2. Simiam in mare iaciāmus; avia enim in villam iam iit, neque nōs vidēre potest. 3. Nautae miserī annōs duōs in litore nostrō habitāverant; itaque iam mare cum cēteris nautis trānsire volēbant. 4. Nam lupī per agrōs fūrtim ibant, ut agricolārum equōs raperent.

B. A Case of Poetic Justice

"Olim," inquit Iūlia, "in arboribus nostris avēs habitābant multae, nidōsque ibi habēbant. Heri autem sex pueri mali in arborēs ēscendērunt; cumque nidōs frēgissent, ōva parvāsque avīs iēcērunt in terram. Tum Mārcus et eius pater, cum vēnissent in hortum, et ōva avēsque humi invēnissent, vehementer irātī agricolam vocāvērunt. Pueri autem interim ad latebrās fūgerant; Mārci enim patrem timēbant. Itaque is agricolam ad eōrum patrēs mīsīt; cumque pueri perterriti iam domum ē latebris vēnissent, avium ōva in mēnsā invēnērunt. Ea nōlēbant edere, sed patrēs timēbant. Ita poenās dedērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. When the boys were throwing the dog into the water, they did not see the teacher on the shore. 2. For many years the hunters have thus helped us; for wolves and bears often come stealthily from the woods and seize our horses. 3. I wanted to rush out from the cave. Quintus, however, had seen beautiful birds there, and was not willing to go home. 4. In the field strong horses were lying on the ground.

B. 1. "The horse had fallen into a stream," said Marcus, "and the farmer was not able to help him." 2. "The sailor also had come five miles through the hills," said Quintus; "for the farmers were frightening the bears with fire, and he wanted to see them (the bears)." 3. "Do you carry books to school?" said Claudia to Julia; "we carry pens and tablets." 4. "My brother sent the chickens to a safe place," said the boy. "Then we hurried into the woods to kill the little foxes."

EXERCISE XLIX

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, quae, quod, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

REMARK. In connection with the preposition *cum*, the ablative is usually written *quōcum*, *quibūscum*, etc.

MODEL SENTENCE

Avēs, quās tenētis, meae sunt, The birds which you hold are mine.

RULE. *The relative pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in number and gender. Its case depends on the structure of the clause in which it stands.*

REMARK. In the above model sentence, *avēs* is the antecedent noun. The relative is therefore plural and feminine; but its case is determined by the fact that it is the direct object of *tenētis*.

VOCABULARY

caput, -itis, n., head.

**iter, itineris, n., journey,
road, march, etc.**

caplō, capere, cēpl, captus,

catch, capture, get, etc.

**faciō, facere, fēcl, factus,
make, do.**

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

**A. 1. Mare trānsire multōs annōs voluimus. 2. Vē-
nātōrēs, quī in silvā habitant, saepe in oppidum eunt, ut**

sagittās emant. 3. Nautae, quibus vīnum dedistis, iam humi iacent ēbrii. 4. Puer, cuius canēs ursa occidit, agricolās validōs hodiē vocābit, ut ursam quoque occidant.

B. An Agile Monkey

“Vēnātor,” inquit agricola, “tum filiōs vocāvit perque silvam properāre coepit. Cumque iam novem milia passuum iter fēcissent, subitō ē spēluncā ērūpit simia perterrita, quae celeriter in arborem magnam ad rānum altum ēscendit. Vēnātor simiam sagittā occidere voluit; filiī autem eam capere et in oppidum dūcere mālēbant; itaque in arborem ēscendere coepērunt. Sed simia interim per rāmōs parvōs in arborēs cēterās trānsibat; puerique, cum ita trānsire vellent, frēgērunt rāmōs, et in caput patris miserī cecidērunt. Interim simia ad latebrās tūtās fūgerat.”

II. Translate into Latin: ✕

A. 1. Have you seen the heads and tails of the fish that I bought in town? 2. When Marcus had traveled many miles with the dogs to catch a wolf, he came to a large stream, and could not cross to the wolves' caves. 3. I see the girl whose father went with us to help the sailors. 4. When we had sat for three hours in the garden, we too went into the tent which the children had made.

B. 1. “The boy to whom I gave the berries broke the birds' nest,” said Julia. 2. “The cook is carrying a basket to the shore,” said Quintus. “There he will buy fish which the sailors have caught in the sea.” 3. “I too will go with you to-day,” said Claudia; “for I want to see the ships, and I shall not be able to go to-morrow.” 4. “The farmers were burning (*lit.* destroying with fire) the boat,” said Marcus, “because the sailors had stolen their horses from the fields.”

EXERCISE L

THE FOURTH OR I-CONJUGATION

audiō, audire, audivī, auditus, hear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	audiō	audīmus	audiam	audiāmus
2d person	audis	auditis	audiās	audiātis
3d person	audit	audiunt	audiat	audiant

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audīrem	audirēmus
2d person	audiēbās	audiēbātis	audirēs	audirētis
3d person	audiēbat	audiēbant	audiret	audirent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	audiam	audiēmus
2d person	audiēs	audiētis
3d person	audiet	audient

REMARK. It will be seen at a glance that the above forms are very like the forms of the corresponding tenses of -iō verbs of the third conjugation. Note particularly, however, the varying quantity of i in the present indicative.

The perfect tenses of the following verbs are already familiar. Learn now the principal parts:

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum, come.

inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus, find.

VOCABULARY

conveniō, convenire, convēni, **prope,** preposition, used with
conventus, meet, come to- the accusative case, *near.*
gether.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Agricola piger, quem prope cymbam vidētis, nōs audit. Eāmus in hortum, eiusque corbulās saxīs frangāmus. 2. Cūr ad lītus voluistis mittere equōs, quōs ego ex agrīs dūxeram? 3. Īstine ad cymbam, ut ibi convenirēs nautās, eōrumque corbulās ad villam ferrēs? 4. Itaque humi sedēbant puerī quoque; nautae enim rapuerant subsellia, eaque ignī cōsūmpserant. 5. Librōsne Mārcus in magistrum iacere voluit? Quid fēcerat magister?

B. *The Wolf and the Fox*

Ōlim in silvā lupus vulpēculam convēnit, cumque eā in agrōs iter facere coepit, ut agricolārum gallinās raperet. Subitō autem vēnātōrēs magnōsque canēs audiunt. Tum lupus perterritae vulpēculae “Tū in arborem ēscendere potes,” inquit. “Ego in spēluncam fugiam.” Itaque cum vulpēcula misera in arborem ēscendere vellet neque posset, lupus celeriter cucurrit in spēluncam et in foliis latuit. Vēnātōrēs interim ad arborem vēnerant vulpēculamque sagittīs iam occidēbant. Tum lupus, cum id audivisset, subitō ē spēluncā ērūpit et vehementer terruit vēnātōrēs, qui cum canibus celeriter per silvam fūgerunt. Ita lupus vulpēculam dēfessam adiūvit.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Let's meet the boys in the fields near the cave; for they have gone to the tall tree to find the little foxes' hiding place. 2. When the farmers heard this (*lit.* it), they

called six children to whom the sailor had given ravens.
 3. To-morrow I shall go into the valley to meet the hunters, who have traveled many miles through the woods to buy horses. 4. I did not want to catch the birds. But the boys who had come with us into the garden climbed into the trees and threw stones into their nests.

B. 1. "Let's run away to the shore," said Marcus to the other children. "Your sisters are in the tent, and they cannot hear us." 2. "We shall soon meet the hunter who lives in the woods," said the teacher. "He often sits there in the shade to kill the wolves which come from the caves to steal the farmers' children. Once he was able thus to catch a little bear, which he brought into the town. There three sailors bought the bear and led it to (their) ship."

EXERCISE LI

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE ACTIVE VOICE

The present tense of the imperative of Latin verbs is found only in the second person, singular and plural.

REGULAR VERBS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
vocō	vocā	vocāte
habēō	habē	habēte
mittō	mitte	mittite
rapiō	rape	rapite
audiō	audi	audite

REMARK. Two regular verbs already familiar (**dūcō**, **faciō**) and one yet to be taken up (**dīcō**) lose final e in the singular of the present imperative active, appearing there as **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**.

IRREGULAR VERBS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
eō	ī	ite
ferō	fer	ferē
nōlō	nōlī	nōlite
sum	es	este

REMARK. In the inflection of *mālō*, *volō*, and *possum*, the imperative mood is lacking.

VOCABULARY

mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*. *secūris*, -is (abl. -ī), *F.*, *ax*,
battle ax.

MODEL SENTENCE

Nōlī (Nōlite) id facere, Don't do it.

RULE. *The negatived imperative of English may be represented in Latin by the present infinitive depending on the imperatives nōlī or nōlite. This is the principal way of expressing Prohibition in Latin.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Nōlite frangere caput canis miserī, puerī. Ōlim, cum in aquam cecidissem, is mē adiūvit. 2. Aquam in hortum celeriter fer, Quīnte; ignis enim iam in folia cecidit. 3. In umbrā prope tabernāculum duās hōrās sedēte. Tum ego veniam, ut vōs domum dūcam. 4. Avium nīdōs, quī diū humī iacuerant, Mārcus tum in rāmīs collocābat.

B. A Cautious Thief

Ōlim sīmia in arbore altā habitābat. Sub arbore erat spēlunca, in quam multae vulpēculae saepe ūvās gallinās-

que tulērunt. Sīmia ūvās rapere voluit; vulpēculās autem timēbat. Itaque corvō "Tū in spēluncam ī," inquit, "ūvāsque vulpēculārum rape." Corvus autem, quī in arbore tūtus sedēre mālēbat, "Lupum vocābō," inquit, "ut is ūvās gallināsque rapiat." Tum sīmia irāta rārum iēcit in caput corvī, quī miser ex arbore mortuus in spēluncam cecidit. Id ^{hic} cū audīssent, vulpēculae perterritae ē spēluncā in latebrās tūtās celeriter fūgērunt. Interim sīmia mala in spēluncam laeta properāvit, ūvāsque rapuit.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Seize the axes which I threw into the tent, boys, and hurry into the fields to kill the bear. 2. Don't go to the shore, girls. I will come to the farmhouse and meet you there. 3. Send the farmer to me, Marcus. We want to catch the raven, and cannot find its cage. 4. When the wolf heard the dogs, he also crossed the stream; but there the farmer killed him with an ax.

B. 1. "Don't frighten us," said Julia to the boys; "for we are carrying dishes, and do not want to break them." 2. "When we saw the dead sailor in the woods," said Marcus, "we ran to the farmhouse; for the girls were much frightened. But there we met the hunters whom you saw yesterday near the stream." 3. "Our sisters will carry the eggs," said Claudia, "and the farmer has gone to the field to call (his) sons to carry the other baskets."

EXERCISE LII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

I-STEMS

fortis, -is, -e, *brave*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortis	fortis	fortia
				fortēs	fortēs	
Abl.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

ācer, -cris, -cre, *fierce, keen, etc.*

Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris	ācris	ācria
				ācrēs	ācrēs	
Abl.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

REMARK. It will be noted that the masculine and feminine forms of *fortis* are identical throughout. The same thing is true of *ācer*, excepting in the nominative singular.

VOCABULARY

ācriter, adverb, *fiercely*.

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi,

fortiter, adverb, *bravely*.pugnātum, *fight*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Ursās, cum diū ācriterque pugnāvissent, vēmātor fortis secūri occidit. 2. Properēmus ad lūdum, ut in

viā Mārcum conveniāmus. 3. Cum vēnātōrem mortuum vidissēs, cūr nōn ad litus cucurristi, ut nautās fortis vocārēs? 4. In hortum fortiter properāte, puellae, lupumque terrēte; mox enim agricolae ex agris cum canibus venient.

B. The Undutiful Sons

Prope silvam magnam cum tribus filiis validis habitābat agricola, quī agrōs multōs habēbat equōsque pulchrōs. Ōlim, cum in agrōs iret dēfessus, pueris "Mēcum venite," inquit, "equōsque ad aquam dūcite." Puerī autem in umbrā humi mālēbant iacēre, nec patrem adiuvāre volēbant. Itaque, cum agricola iam ex hortō isset, corvus, quī pigrōs filiōs sub arboribus viderat, ē silvā ursam vocāvit, quae laeta ē spēluncā properāvit, ut puerōs raperet. Eī miserī, cum ursam vidissent, perterriti fugere nōn potuerunt; paterque mox sub arboribus filiōs invēnit mortuōs. Ita puerī malī poenās dedērunt.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. The wolves will come stealthily from the woods to eat your monkey, boys. 2. Don't fight, sailors. The farmers whom Marcus has called are coming from the valley; I can hear their dogs. 3. The girls were in the yard, and they did not see the wolf. 4. The boys whose fathers you met yesterday will soon go to the shore to catch fish.

B. 1. "The brave sailors, whom my brother helped," said Quintus, "have gone to the woods to find the wolf." 2. "Marcus had begun to be unwilling to go," said Claudia; "but when he heard the sea, he ran quickly to the boat which the sailor had given to my sisters." 3. "Run to the farmhouse, children," said the farmer. "I saw a bear in the woods to-day, and could not kill it."

4. "Don't be afraid of the drunken sailors, boys," said the teacher. "They cannot frighten the dogs, which are now coming bravely from the field."

EXERCISE LIII

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

exercitus, m., army

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	exercitus	exercitūs
Genitive	exercitūs	exercituum
Dative	exercitui	exercitibus
Accusative	exercitum	exercitūs
Ablative	exercitū	exercitibus

REMARK. Note that in the ending of the nominative singular the *u* is short, whereas it is long in the *-us* of the genitive singular and of the nominative and accusative plural.

Gender. Nouns of the fourth declension in *-us* are masculine or (rarely) feminine. For the inflection of neuters, see Summary of Forms, page 194.

VOCABULARY

fluctus, -ūs, m., <i>wave</i> .	lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum,
impetus, -ūs, m., <i>attack</i> .	<i>play</i> .
imperātor, -ōris, m., <i>general</i> , <i>commander</i> .	parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, <i>prepare</i> . Sometimes con-
abscidō, abscidere, abscidī, abscisus, <i>cut off</i> .	strued with the present infinitive.

THE IMPERFECT OF CUSTOMARY PAST ACTION

In addition to the use already familiar, the imperfect indicative is often employed to describe a repeated past action; *e.g.*, *Ē silvā ursae in agrōs veniebant*, *Bears used to*



EXERCITUS ITER FACIT

The above picture carved on a monument represents a division of the Roman army crossing the Danube on a bridge of boats. The commander in chief (*imperātor*), who leads the column, does not appear in that part of the carving here shown; but two subordinate commanders can be seen, one already come to land, the other still upon the bridge.

come from the forest into the fields, or Bears would come from the forest into the fields. From now on in the Exercises this use of the imperfect will occasionally be illustrated.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Imperator autem exercitum fortem ē silvā ad litus dūxit, ibique in nautās malōs impetum ācrem fēcit. 2. Vōs quoque, agricolae, nōlīte timēre, sed fortiter ad villam currite; nōs enim interim nautās vocābimus et in vallem mittēmus. 3. Prope insulam fluctūs sunt magnī, nautaeque ibi saxa timent. 4. Agricolārum filiae humī collocāvērunt avium nidōs, eōsque ignī cōsūmpsērunt; interim puerī corvī caveam pulchram in mare iēcērunt.

B. *The Repentant Brother*

In villā habitābant puer et puella, quōrum māter diū mortua erat. Pater saepe per silvā ibat in oppidum; interim liberī prope villam lūdēbant. Ōlim, cum puella in āreā ^{esset} ēssēt, frāter malus eius pūpae caput abscidit. Itaque puella vehementer irāta in silvā properāvit, neque eam frāter invenire potuit. Mox ē silvā vēnit agricolae filius, quī ibi lupum magnum viderat. Tum frāter perterritus cum cane validō in silvā celeriter cucurrit, ut sorōrem inveniret. Ibi humī iacēbat puella dēfessa, eamque edere lupus parābat. Sed canis fortis, cum id vidisset, in lupum fortiter fēcit impetum. Ita caput lupī, cum is ācriter cum cane pugnāret, puer secūrī frēgit.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. When the farmers whom the general had called came to the shore, they wanted to cross to the island; but they could not, because the waves were high (*lit.* great).

2. Let's cut off the fishes' tails and throw them into the water; the other fishes will eat them. 3. The cook is preparing dinner. Let's play now in the shade. I will call the fat boy whom we met to-day on the shore.

B. 1. "The general was preparing to burn the ship," said the sailor. "But *we* did not want to do it; and so he sent the farmers to call the other sailors." 2. "When the children were playing on the shore," said Julia, "the waves destroyed their boat." 3. "However," said Marcus, "the bear made a fierce attack upon the dogs; for there were three little bears in the cave." 4. "Why did you cut off my doll's head, Quintus?" cried Claudia. "I'll go into the woods, and the bears will eat me there." "Don't run into the woods," said Quintus. "I'll not kill the other dolls."

EXERCISE LIV

THE PASSIVE VOICE

PERFECT TENSES

Verbs of all conjugations form the passive of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the same way, namely, by adding to the perfect passive participle (the fourth principal part) certain forms of *sum*. One model, therefore, suffices for all conjugations; *e.g.*:

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

PASSIVE VOICE

PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	SINGULAR		SINGULAR
1st person	vocātus sum		vocātus sim
2d person	vocātus es		vocātus sis
3d person	vocātus est		vocātus sit

INDICATIVE

PLURAL

1st person	vocāti sumus
2d person	vocāti estis
3d person	vocāti sunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PLURAL

vocāti simus
vocāti sitis
vocāti sint

PLUPERFECT TENSE

SINGULAR

1st person	vocātus eram
2d person	vocātus erās
3d person	vocātus erat

SINGULAR

vocātus essem
vocātus essēs
vocātus esset

PLURAL

1st person	vocāti erāmus
2d person	vocāti erātis
3d person	vocāti erant

PLURAL

vocāti essēmus
vocāti essētis
vocāti essent

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

1st person	vocātus erō
2d person	vocātus eris
3d person	vocātus erit

PLURAL

vocāti erimus
vocāti eritis
vocāti erunt

REMARK. Note that the participle **vocātus** is declined in the same way as **bonus**, and that it agrees in number and gender with the subject of the sentence. For convenience, only the masculine forms are given above; but any gender might be called for, as, **Claudia vocāta est, puellae vocātae sunt**, etc.

With **vocō** as a model, form the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of **habeō, mittō, ferō, rapiō, and audiō**.

VOCABULARY

bellum, -i, N., war.

pāx, pācis, F., peace.

hostis, -is (abl. -e), M. and F., enemy.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, wage, carry on, do.

accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus, receive, accept, take.

remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus, send back.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Hostium imperātor nōbīscum iam octō annōs bellum gesserat, neque capta erant oppida nostra. 2. Sorōrēs meae, cum in silvam issent, subitō in ursarum spēluncam cecidērunt, et ita occīsae sunt. 3. Cum sex milia passuum iter fēcissēmus, ad locum idōneum vēnimus; moxque sub arboribus latuerāmus, ut corvōs caperēmus.

B. A Traitorous Schoolmaster

Multi puerī parvī, quōrum patrēs tum fortiter cum hostibus bellum gerēbant, cum magistrō ex oppidō in agrōs veniēbant, ut ibi lūderent. Saepe ita fēcērant; sed ōlim, cum multa milia passuum per agrōs issent, subitō magister malus puerōs perterritōs ad hostium exercitum dūxit, eōsque imperātōrī dedit. Is autem irātus nōlēbat accipere puerōs, quī ita ad eum ductī erant. Itaque magistrum in oppidum, puerōs domum remisit. Ibi cum magister poenās dedisset, pāx cum hostium imperātōre bonō facta est.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Do not make peace with the enemy. 2. We have been sent back from the hills to the shore, and cannot help our fathers and mothers, who are living in the valley. 3. When war had been waged five years, the generals of the enemy marched stealthily many miles through the forest to burn our town. 4. Were your cups broken, cook? For when I was crossing a stream, the basket suddenly fell into the water.

B. 1. "The monkey was unwilling to receive the little fox into the cage," said the sailor; "and so they fought fiercely for a long time." 2. "Once," said the teacher,

"a great ship was broken there by the waves. On the shore were strong farmers who wanted to help the poor sailors, and could not." 3. "The doves upon which the raven made a fierce attack," said the farmer, "were killed; they are now lying on the ground near the farmhouse." "Let's carry them to the woods," said Marcus, "and throw them into the bears' den."

EXERCISE LV.

PRONOUN OF IDENTITY AND INTENSIVE PRONOUN

idem, eadem, idem, the same

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	{ eīdem iīdem īdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	{ eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	{ eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself, etc.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
Abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

REMARK 1. Note that *idem* is a compound of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

REMARK 2. In connection with a verb in the first or second person, *ipse* means "myself," "yourself," etc.; e.g., *Ipsi ad litus properāvimus*, *We ourselves hurried to the shore*.

NOTE. These and several other pronouns may be used either as adjectives or nouns. In translating the neuter nominative and accusative of pronouns used as nouns, it is often necessary to supply the word "thing"; e.g., *Idem vidēmus*, *We see the same (thing)*, *Eadem audivērunt*, *They heard the same (things)*, etc.

VOCABULARY

flūmen, -inis, N., river.
miles, -itis, M., soldier.

statim, adverb, at once, immediately.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. *Hostēs iam puerōs puellāsque occidēbant; nōs idem faciēbāmus.* 2. *Ipsius imperātōris filius in agris occisus est; tum pater statim pācem nobiscum fēcit.* 3. *Caput militis fortis abscisum est, et in oppidum remissum.* 4. *Nōlī fugere, Quīnte, sed fortiter parvās ursās rape; nōs enim ursās cēterās terrēbimus.*

B. A Soldier off Duty

"Ōlim," inquit avus meus, "vēnātor ē silvā vēnit in oppidum, ut secūrēs trīs emeret. Cum autem domum iret, miles ēbrius, quī sub arbore altā sedēbat, in eum subitō impetum ācrem fēcit, secūrēque rapere voluit. Tum vēnātor vehementer irātus hōrās duās cum milite ācriter pugnāvit, nec eum occīdere potuit. Interim autem in silvam vēnerat imperātor ipse; quī statim, cum militem vidisset ēbrium, vēnātōrem adiūvit, militemque in oppidum remisit, ut ibi poenās daret."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Let us at once send back the general himself; for peace has now been made with the enemy. 2. The sons of the general were received, but his daughters were sent back to the ship. 3. The boat has been thrown upon the rocks by the waves. The tired sailors themselves will carry it to the river. 4. The war had been waged many years; but the enemy were now preparing to make peace.

B. 1. "Bring the same boys to me, Quintus," said the soldier; "I want to send them back to their brave fathers." 2. "What then was done," asked Quintus, "when the army had made a fierce attack upon the town, and had not been able to break the gate?" 3. "The farmers would cut off the horses' tails," said Claudia. "Then the horses were not pleased." 4. "When we were playing near the river," said Julia, "we heard the same drunken sailor who frightened the girls yesterday; and so we ran at once to the farmhouse."

EXERCISE LVI

THE FIRST OR $\bar{A}$ -CONJUGATION

vocō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocor	vocāmur	vocer	vocēmur
2d person	vocāris	vocāmini	vocēris	vocēmini
	vocāre		vocēre	
3d person	vocātur	vocantur	vocētur	vocentur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocābar	vocābāmur	vocārer	vocārēmur
2d person	vocābaris	vocābāmini	vocārēris	vocārēmini
	vocābare		vocārēre	
3d person	vocābātur	vocābantur	vocārētur	vocārentur

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	vocābor	vocābimur
2d person	vocāberis	vocābimini
	vocābere	
3d person	vocābitur	vocābuntur

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	vocāre	vocāmini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

vocāri

REMARK 1. As a preliminary to learning the above forms of the indicative and subjunctive, note (1) that everywhere in the third persons the passive is formed by adding *-ur* to the corresponding active forms; and (2) that in the first persons *r* is either added to final *ō* of the corresponding active forms (with shortening of the *ō*), or substituted there for final *m* or *s*.

REMARK 2. Observe the relation which the forms of the present imperative bear to those of the second persons of the present indicative.

VOCABULARY

nox, **noctis**, F., *night*.

castra, **-ōrum**, N., *camp*.

REMARK. In the plural, **nox** has I-stem endings.

MODEL SENTENCE

Ursae enim ā vēnātōre occisae erant, For the bears had been killed by the hunter.

RULE. *With a passive verb, the doer is indicated by the ablative case introduced by the preposition ā, ab. This construction is known as Ablative of the Agent.*

REMARK 1. The ablative of agency must be distinguished carefully from the ablative without a preposition as used to tell the means by which a thing is accomplished; e.g., **Ursae enim secūri occisae erant**, *For the bears had been killed with an ax.* Here the doer is not mentioned at all; but the means by which the act was done is indicated by **secūri**.

REMARK 2. The two forms of the preposition **ā, ab** are identical in meaning. The form **ab** is to be used when the following ablative begins with a vowel or **h**.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Nam milītēs, quī ad flūmen ierant, ibi statim ab hostibus eisdem captī sunt. **2.** Parābāsne vulpēculās in



BUILDING A RAMPART

Roman soldiers were trained to work as well as to fight, and on campaigns, even under ordinary circumstances, they had much fortifying to do. For when the army halted in the open country even for a night, a well-ordered camp (*castra*) had to be laid out and surrounded by a wall of fortification. The above illustration represents another carving on the monument referred to in connection with Exercise LIII.

silvam remittere? Mārcus ipse in corbulā eās collocābit et in silvam feret. 3. Cūr bellum ā militibus nostrīs sex annōs cum hostibus fortibus gestum erat? 4. Imperātor idem, quia pācēm nōbīscum facere nōn potuerat, flūmen statim trānsiit, ut ā cēterīs hostibus adiuvārī posset.

B. The Brave Soldiers

Puerī trēs in villā prope flūmen magnum habitābant, ibique piscīs pulchrōs saepe cēpērunt. Sed ōlim, cum in ripā corbulae cum piscibus collocātae essent, subitō ē silvā ērūpit ursā parvā, quae terruit puerōs, piscēsque rapere coepit. Sed iam pater ipse puerōrum ex agrīs properābat, ut ursam occīderet; quae perterrita in arborem ēscendit, moxque in rāmō magnō sedēbat. Statim autem agricola quoque ēscendit, rāmumque abscīdere parābat. Itaque ursā, cum in rāmōs cēterōs trānsīre vellet, ad terram in caput cecidit, et ā canibus occīsa est. Tum militēs trēs, quī in umbrā interim latuerant, iam fortiter ē latebris properāvērunt, caputque ursae abscīdērunt; quod mox tulērunt in castra imperātōrique dedērunt.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. ^xLet's send back the nests to the farmhouse, so that they may be given at once to the little girls. 2. When the soldiers were being called to camp by the general, the enemy quickly crossed the river with a large army and burned our ships. 3. ^xDon't sit on the dolls' table, boys; Quintus broke it yesterday. 4. When we had hurried home from the woods, in order that the wolf which we had caught might be at once placed in a cage, the farmer refused to receive him; and we could not send the wolf back to the woods, because it was now night.

B. 1. "Let's hurry to camp at once," said the same soldiers; "for the enemy will soon cross the river, and we are afraid of the night." 2. "When a fierce attack had been made by the enemy on our army," said our grandmother, "the other soldiers fled into the woods; but your grandfather, who was a general, himself traveled many miles through the night to a small camp, to warn the sailors who had been sent from the other islands to the shore."

EXERCISE LVII

INDEFINITE PRONOUN

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, (a) certain

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

NOTE. The above pronoun is here treated as an adjective. When it is used as a noun, the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter take the form **quiddam, a certain (thing)**.

REMARK. As an aid to the memory, note the close relation between the forms of **quidam** and those of the relative **qui**.

VOCABULARY

nūbēs, -is (abl. -e), *f.*, *cloud*. āter, -tra, -trum, *black, dark*:
 igitur, postpositive conjunc- māne, adverb, *in the morn-*
 tion, *therefore*. ing, *early*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Militēs idem ad castra māne ibunt, ut ab imperā-
 tore ipsō adiuventur. 2. Tum imperātor fortis cum exercitū
 parvō statim flūmen quoddam trānsiit, et per noctem in
 hostium agrōs iter fēcit. 3. Eāmus in silvam, ut avium
 nidōs inveniāmus. Validōs puerōs vocā, Quīntē. 4. Equi
 ātrī, cum ā milite quōdam ad flūmen ductī essent, in aquam
 celeriter cucurrerunt.

B. A Stolen Picnic

In lūdō quōdam cum magistrō habitābant puerī paucī.
 Ōlim, cum iam nox esset magisterque in lectō iacēret, puerī
 fūrtim ē lūdō iēerunt in agrōs, mālaque agricolārū multa
 rapuerunt. Tum, cum rīvum trānsissent ad insulam par-
 vam, prope ignem, quem ē rāmīs fēcerant, mox humī
 iacēbant, ut māla ederent. Sed subitō in caelō erant
 multae nūbēs ātrae, neque lūnam iam vidēre poterant puerī;
 quī igitur perterritī per noctem domum currere coepērunt.
 Ita duo, quī obēsī erant, in rīvum cecidērunt, māneque
 mortuī inventī sunt. Cēterī autem, ut poenās darent, ā
 magistrō missī sunt ad agricolās, quōrum māla rapuerant.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. When the girls went into the yard to call the
 boys, they saw black clouds in the sky. 2. Therefore
 certain soldiers hastened to the farmhouse, and seized the

horses which had been captured by the enemy. 3. While the farmer himself was being called by the sailor, his sons were preparing to send horses to the camp. 4. The enemy had now done the same thing; and so we wanted to make peace with them at once.

B. 1. "While the dogs were playing in the yard near the farmhouse," said Marcus, "a wolf came stealthily into the garden and made a fierce attack upon the little bear." 2. "Let's run bravely into the water," said Quintus; "for the boat has been filled with the waves, and the girls are thoroughly frightened." 3. "In the morning," said the sailor, "we shall send certain hunters to the same place to meet the other generals." 4. "Our general," said my grandfather, "had refused to receive the brave sailors and farmers. And so a certain farmer's son hurried through the night to the camp of the enemy, and led soldiers to the shore to capture our ships."

EXERCISE LVIII

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION

habeō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD			SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	
PRESENT TENSE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habeor	habēmur	habear	habeāmur
2d person	habēris	habēmini	habeāris	habeāmini
	habēre		habeāre	
3d person	habētur	habentur	habeātur	habeantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habēbar	habēbāmur	habērer	habērēmur
2d person	habēbāris	habēbāmini	habērēris	habērēmini
	habēbare		habērere	
3d person	habēbātur	habēbantur	habērētur	habērentur

*They
might*

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	habēbor	habēbimur
2d person	habēberis	habēbimini
	habēbere	
3d person	habēbitur	habēbuntur

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	habēre	habēmini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

habēri

REMARK. In memorizing these forms, note the correspondences between active and passive which were pointed out in Exercise LVI.

VOCABULARY

longē, adverb, *far (away)*. iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus, *command, order*. Construed with the accusative and present infinitive.

REMARK 1. In previous Exercises several verbs have been mentioned as construed with the present infinitive ; e.g., possum, mālō, etc. The meaning of some of these verbs is such that (as in the case of iubeō above) the dependent infinitive may have a subject accusative. Thus we may say either Iubeō tē ire, *I order you to go*, or Volō tē ire, *I want you to go*.

REMARK 2. The genitive plural of *lūx* is lacking, and the ending of the accusative plural is *-ēs* or *-ia*.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Nam ā pueris isdem nōn terrēbor. 2. Corbulae bācis complēbantur. 3. Nōlī pueris sagittās dare; eōs enim longē in silvam ire nolumus. 4. Militēs igitur iussērunt nautās dēfessōs in ignem rāmōs iacere, ut in litore magna esset lūx. 5. In militēs, cum per vallem iter facerent, eōrundem agricolārum canēs fortiter impetum fēcērunt.

B. *Lost in the Cave*

"Ōlim," inquit avia mea, "puer et puella parva ex hortō fūrtim in silvam iērunt, ut rīvum flōrēsque vidērent. Ibi autem spēluncam invēnērunt magnam, in quam laetī cucurrērunt, ut in umbrā lūderent; ursae enim ab eis nōn timēbantur. Cum ibi diū lūsissent, puer subitō longē in spēluncam fūgit, puellaque, quae eum capere volēbat, quoque per spēluncam properāvit. Diū cucurrērunt; sed iam viam vidēre nōn poterant, quia in spēluncā erat nox ātra. Humi igitur perterriti sēdērunt. Mox autem puella lūcem parvam longē vīdit; cumque tria mīlia passuum ad eum locum iter fēcissent, subitō ē spēluncā in litus vērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The general wanted certain soldiers to carry baskets into the fields to be filled with apples by the farmers. 2. Therefore let us send the hunter himself at once to the camp. For the enemy have crossed the river, and will make an attack in the morning. 3. Once, when the night was dark, certain sailors fled from the town and ran to the river, so that the enemy might be warned. 4. The

general ordered the same soldiers to cross the river and take our camp.

B. 1. "The enemy were then fighting fiercely with us," said a certain soldier; "but our general ordered us to make an attack at once on the camp also." 2. "While the boats were being filled with fish," said the hunter, "certain farmers stole the sailors' horses, which had been led far into the fields." 3. "Many soldiers had been killed by the enemy," said my father. "But it was now dark night; and so the others fled from the forest, and were carried to the island by ship."

EXERCISE LIX

THE FIFTH OR $\bar{E}$ -DECLENSION

	<i>diēs, M., day</i>		<i>rēs, F., circumstance, thing</i>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Genitive	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
Dative	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Accusative	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ablative	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine. Even *diēs*, which is an exception to this rule, is sometimes feminine in the singular.

VOCABULARY

CARDINAL NUMERALS

<i>ūnus, -a, -um, one.</i>	<i>sēdecim, sixteen.</i>
<i>ūndecim, eleven.</i>	<i>septendecim, seventeen.</i>
<i>duodecim, twelve.</i>	<i>duodēviginti, eighteen.</i>
<i>tredecim, thirteen.</i>	<i>ūndēviginti, nineteen.</i>
<i>quattuordecim, fourteen.</i>	<i>viginti, twenty.</i>
<i>quindecim, fifteen.</i>	<i>Indi, -ōrum, M., Indians.</i>

With the exception of *ūnus*, the above cardinal numerals are indeclinable. The plural of *ūnus* is regular, but the singular is inflected as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
Nominative	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
Genitive	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>
Dative	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>	<i>ūni</i>
Accusative	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
Ablative	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>

There are in Latin eight other adjectives declined in the genitive and dative singular after the fashion of *ūnus*. Although not all of these words are to be here used, the full list should be memorized once for all; namely, *alius*, *alter*; *ūllus*, *nūllus*; *uter*, *neuter*; *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*. See also Summary of Forms, page 197.

NOTE. When strengthened by the adverb *ūnā*, the preposition *cum* is often well rendered by "together with," "along with," etc.; e.g., *Nāvēs ūnā cum cymbis ad insulam missae sunt*, *The ships, together with the boats, were sent to the island.*

Is, ea, id AS AN ADJECTIVE

The personal pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id*, "he," "she," "it," may also be used as an adjective meaning "this"; e.g., *is diēs*, *this day*; *ea rēs*, *this circumstance*, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

- A. 1. *Ūnā cum eīs nautīs fortibus ad castra properēmus*; ibi enim milites nōs ad imperātorem ipsum dūcent.
2. *Cum audivissēmus equōs hostium lūcemque in litore vidissēmus*, tum imperātor iussit exercitum celeriter per silvam iter facere.
3. *Nūbēs albās in caelō vidēte*, puellae.

Potestisne lūnam quoque vidēre? 4. Cum id bellum sēdecim annōs gestum esset, hostēs mare nāvibus trānsiērunt, et in oppida nostra impetum ācrem fēcērunt.

B. Captured by the Indians

"In quōdam oppidō," inquit māter vestra, "prope silvam habitābat agricola ūnā cum duōbus filiīs parvis. Ōlim, cum diū bellum cum Indis gestum esset pāxque iam esset facta, filiī eius agricolae laetī per agrōs lūdēbant. Subitō autem trēs Indi malī ērūpērunt ē silvā, puerōsque cēpērunt, quī perterritī fugere nōn potuerant; tum statim puerōs ūnā cum equis, quōs ex agrīs rapuerant, longē in silvam dūxērunt. Pater vehementer irātus in silvam statim cucurrit, neque filiōs invenire potuit. Eī autem, cum multōs diēs cum Indis habitāvissent, ā militibus quibusdam inventī sunt; quī occidērunt Indōs, puerōsque ad patrem remisērunt."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. These dogs together with the raven will be given to the boys by whom the wolf was killed. 2. Therefore the general himself with a large army marched through the fields sixteen miles. 3. The Indians at once made an attack on the three farmhouses, and captured one farmer's horses. 4. In the morning the general will order these brave hunters to cross the river with the same soldiers, so as to burn the tents of the enemy.

B. 1. "Let us send back twelve Indians into the forest," said the soldier; "the others we will throw into the waves." 2. "Together with (his) father and brothers," said Claudia, "Marcus was called into the fields yesterday by the soldiers; for the enemy were then crossing the river." 3. "I have received twelve baskets," said the sailor. "Where are the others?" 4. Then said the farmer

to(his) sons, "Why have you cut off the heads of these brave dogs? Soon you will kill my horses, too." 5. "Thoroughly frightened by this circumstance," said the teacher, "the sailors have fled to the river. To-morrow the soldiers will do the same thing."

EXERCISE LX

THE THIRD OR E-CONJUGATION

mittō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st per.	mittor	mittimur	mittar	mittāmur
2d per.	mitteris mittere	mittimini	mittāris mittāre	mittāmini
3d per.	mittitur	mittuntur	mittātur	mittantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st per.	mittēbar	mittēbāmur	mitterer	mitterēmur
2d per.	mittēbāris mittēbare	mittēbāmini	mitterēris mitterēre	mitterēmini
3d per.	mittēbātur	mittēbantur	mitterētur	mitterentur

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st per.	mittar	mittēmur
2d per.	mittēris mittēre	mittēmini
3d per.	mittētur	mittentur

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	mittere	mittimini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

mitti

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

(quis) qui, quae, (quid) quod, *who? what?*

When used as an adjective, this word is inflected exactly as the relative *qui, quae, quod*. When it is used as a noun, *quis* replaces *qui* (nominative singular), *quid* replaces *quod* (nominative and accusative singular), and the feminine is lacking throughout. The noun use is the more frequent; *e.g.*, *Quis venit? Who is coming? Quibuscum sedētis? With whom are you sitting? Quōs vidit? Whom did he see? etc.*

VOCABULARY

*commōtus, -a, -um, excited, omnis, -is, -e, every, the
disturbed. whole, all.*
frūmentum, -i, N., grain. uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. *Quis voluit avīs pulchrās in silvam remitti?*
2. *Nam Indī, eō impetū commōtī, frūmentum omne in spēluncā ātrā cōllocāvērunt.* 3. *Vēnātōrum uxōrēs ūnā cum vigintī liberis in agris cuiusdam agricolae imperātōrēs ipsōs convēnērunt.* 4. *Miles obēsus, cum liberī ab Indīs in silvam dūcerentur, in villā latēbat. Nōlite eum terrere.*

B. An Indian Raid

In quādam valle erat flūmen magnum, in quō parvae insulae erant multae. Ibi habitābant ūnā cum uxōribus liberisque agricolae quīdam fortēs. Indi autem saepe ē silvā fūrtim veniēbant ad flūminis ripam, et in cymbis parvis ad insulās properābant, ut in agricolārum villās impetum facerent. Ōlim, cum ita equi in agris omnēs occisi essent, frūmentumque esset igni cōsūmptum, liberī quoque sēdecim ab Indis capti sunt et longē in silvam ducti. Tum agricolae validi, vehementer commōti, ad ripam properāvērunt; cumque mīlia passuum tredecim iter fēcissent per noctem, subitō in Indōrum castra impetum ācrem fēcērunt, eaque igni cōsūmpsērunt. Itaque hostēs longē per vallēs fūgērunt perterriti, liberī autem ā patribus domū ducti sunt.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. These Indians all came into one place, and for many days terrified the wives and children of the farmers. 2. To whom was the black horse given? By whom was he led into the field? Whose grain is he eating? 3. When they saw the grain which the farmers were bearing to the river bank, the soldiers wanted to be carried at once by ship to the island. 4. The general is ordering certain hunters to travel through the woods to the river; for a camp has been placed there near the town by the enemy.

B. 1. "Where is the light of the moon, Quintus?" asked Marcus. "The night is dark, and I cannot find the road." 2. "When the chickens were being killed by the little fox," said Quintus, "we all ran quickly to call the farmer." 3. "Much disturbed by these things," said my father, "the hunter's brave wife sent the same soldier to

warn the general, who was then marching into the forest with a small army to capture certain bad Indians."

4. "The Indians would often rush forth suddenly from the forest and kill our horses," said your grandfather. "Then we would run to the camp ourselves and call the soldiers."

EXERCISE LXI

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

sui (gen. sing.), *of himself,
of herself, of itself.*

IRREGULAR NOUN

vis, F., *violence, force.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nominative	—	—	vis	virēs
Genitive	sui	sui	—	virium
Dative	sibi	sibi	—	viribus
Accusative	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē	vim	virīs, virēs
Ablative	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē	vi	viribus

REMARK. Note that the forms of **sui** are the same for all genders.

VOCABULARY

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus,
cōgnitus, *find out, learn.* *think.*

dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictus, *say.* **tempestās, -ātis,** F., *storm.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

What a person says, thinks, hears, or the like, may be reported directly or indirectly. Thus, if Marcus yesterday uttered the sentence, "The dog is lying in the grass," to-day I can report what he said

(1) Directly: *Marcus said, "The dog is lying in the grass;"*

(2) Indirectly: *Marcus said that the dog was lying in the grass.*

By the use of either sentence I tell exactly what Marcus said, but in one case I quote the very words he used, in the other I do not. Quotation by the second method is known as Indirect Discourse. The two English sentences given above would appear in Latin in the following form :

(1) Direct: "**Canis in herbā iacet,**" inquit **Mārcus.**

(2) Indirect: **Mārcus dixit canem in herbā iacēre.**

It will at once be seen that the Latin method of indirect quotation is quite different from the English; for the Latin here somewhat literally would be: "Marcus said *the dog to be lying* in the grass."

RULE FOR INDIRECT DISCOURSE. *The infinitive with subject accusative is used in quoting indirectly anything said, thought, heard, or the like.*

NOTE 1. Indirect quotation of course is not confined to things said, thought, heard, etc., in the past. Whatever *is, was, or shall be* said, thought, heard, etc., is treated in one and the same way; e.g.,

Vēnātor putat ursam in spēluncā esse, The hunter *thinks* that the bear is in the cave.

Vēnātor putābit ursam in spēluncā esse, The hunter *will think* that the bear is in the cave.

Vēnātor putāvit ursam in spēluncā esse, The hunter *thought* that the bear was in the cave.

At first sight it may seem a little odd that in the last of these examples the present infinitive **esse** balances "was" in the English translation. The justification of the present infinitive in such a sentence at once appears, however, if we revert again to a literal rendering: "The hunter thought the bear *to be* in the cave."

NOTE 2. In addition to its subject accusative, the infinitive of indirect discourse may, of course, have also an accusative object;

e.g., Mārcus dicit vĕnātōrem occidere ursam, Marcus says that the hunter is killing the bear.

NOTE 3. The reflexive *sē* (*sēsē*) is used as subject or direct object of the infinitive of indirect discourse when the verb of saying, thinking, etc., is in the third person, and the accusative refers to the subject of that verb; *e.g., Mārcus dixit sē in herbā iacēre* (Marcus said himself to be lying in the grass), *Marcus said that he was lying in the grass.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Dicisne tē in agris equōs vidēre? Nautae putant omnis equōs in valle esse. 2. Putāvimus nōs ad insulās trānsire posse; vīs autem flūminis magna erat. 3. Imperātor cōgnōverat sē ibi cum hostibus pugnāre nōn posse. 4. Cum vī tempestātis nāvēs validae frangerentur, nautae miserī in mare frūmentum omne iēcērunt.

B. The Enemy Repulsed

Agricola quidam ūnā cum uxōre liberisque diū prope flūmen pulchrum habitāverat. Ōlim autem ad villam subitō cucurrērunt milītēs quattuor, quī dixerunt Indōs celeriter per silvam venire. Tum agricola commōtus uxōrem iussit liberōs in cymbā collocāre; ipse autem in agrōs properāvit, ut agricolās cēterōs monēret. Interim Indī ē silvā vĕnerant; quī cum villam ignī cōsūmpsissent neque agricolam invenire potuissent, ad ripam cucurrērunt. Sed māter perterrita iam in Insulam quandam trānsierat, ibique tūta cum liberis in spĕluncā latēbat. Cum autem Indī quoque ad eam Insulam trānsire parārent, subitō ab agricolis fortibus impetus ācer factus est. Hostēs multī ab eis capti sunt, cēterique celeriter in silvam fūgērunt.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Who thinks that there are eighteen sailors in the boat? Whom have you sent to meet them? 2. I had learned that the boys were throwing the fish into the sea. 3. The farmhouses had been wrecked (*lit.* broken) by the force of the storm; and so the general placed the tired soldiers in the tents which he had found in the camp of the enemy. 4. I wanted the books to be given to one boy and two girls. To whom did you give them?

B. 1. Marcus said that he was filling all the baskets with grain. 2. For many days we traveled with this brave sailor through the hills and valleys. 3. Much frightened by these things, the children now learned that the same Indians were killing the horses. 4. The farmers seized a boat, so that (their) wives and children might be sent at once to a safe and suitable place. 5. "Do you see a light in the sky, my son?" asked the farmer. "I think I see a great star," replied the boy; "but clouds are filling the whole sky."

EXERCISE LXII

IRREGULAR VERB

ferō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	feror	ferimur	ferar	ferāmur
2d person	ferris	ferimini	ferāris	ferāmini
	ferre		ferāre	
3d person	fertur	feruntur	ferātur	ferantur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	ferēbar	ferēbāmur	ferrer	ferrēmur
2d person	ferēbāris ferēbāre	ferēbāmini	ferrēris ferrēre	ferrēmini
3d person	ferēbātur	ferēbantur	ferrētur	ferrentur

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	ferar	ferēmur
2d person	ferēris ferēre	ferēmini
3d person	ferētur	ferentur

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	ferre	ferimini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

ferri

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

In Latin an entirely new sentence may be begun by a relative pronoun referring back to something mentioned in the previous sentence. The relative so used is best translated by a demonstrative pronoun; *e.g.*, *Indī in silvam properāvērunt. Quod cum vīdissent, agricolae laeti ē latebris vērērunt, The Indians hurried into the forest. When the farmers saw this, they came joyfully from their hiding places.*

REMARK. Note that in this use, as regularly elsewhere, the relative stands first in its clause.

VOCABULARY

ovīs, -is (abl. -e), F., <i>sheep</i> .	nūllus, -a, -um, <i>none, no, not</i>
vōx, vōcis, F., <i>voice, cry</i> .	. . . <i>any</i> .
custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivi, custōditus, <i>watch, guard</i> .	ūllus, -a, -um, <i>any</i> . Used mostly in negative clauses.
redeō, redire, rediī, reditum, <i>return, go back</i> .	fortasse, adverb, <i>perhaps</i> .
	paulō post, adverbial phrase, <i>a little later</i> .

REMARK. The declension of nūllus and ūllus is the same as that of ūnus; see Exercise LIX.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Magnā vōce puerōs vocēmus, ut corbulae statim ab eis ad castra ferri possint. 2. Quod cum cōgnōvissent, milītēs celeriter rediērunt, ut imperātōris uxōrem liberōsque custōdirent. 3. Ovēs vī flūminis perterritae ad insulam trānsire nōlēbant. 4. Quibus rēbus commōtī, agricolae dīxērunt sē ovīs nūllās habēre; paulō post autem ūnā cum gallinīs ovīs multās hostibus dedērunt.

B. A Practical Joke

Agricolae quīdam, quī ovēs habēbant multās, puerum pigrum in agrōs ire iubēbant, ut eas custōdiret. Cui "Lupus fortasse ē silvā veniet," inquiunt. "Tum nōs vocā; nam ex hortis statim currēmus, ut terreāmus lupum tēque adiuvēmus." Diū puer custōdivit ovīs, neque ūllum lupum vidit. Sed olim, ut agricolās terreret, subitō magnā vōce "Lupōs, lupōs!" inquit. Quā vōce commōtī, agricolae celeriter in agrōs cucurrērunt. Cum autem lupum vidissent nūllum, puerumque lūdere cōgnōvissent, vehementer irātī in hor-

tōs rediērunt. Sed paulō post vēnit ē silvā lupus magnus. Tum puer perterritus magnā vōce "Lupum, lupum!" inquit; "celeriter currite, agricolae!" Ei autem putābant puerum lūdere, nec in agrōs properāre voluērunt. Is igitur miser ā lupō occisus est.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. A little later, perhaps, a few fish will be carried to town by the sailors; but I do not think that there are any sailors in the ship now. 2. When the general had seen this, he ordered sixteen brave soldiers to travel two days through the hills and valleys to the bank of a great river. 3. Whom were you guarding? Whose voice was heard in the fields? 4. Why did you return home from the shore? Did you think that the Indians were burning your grain?

B. 1. "While I was myself watching the same sheep," said the farmer, "a strong wolf came from (its) cave. For the night was dark, and there were many clouds in the sky." 2. "In the morning," said Julia, "we shall hear the voices of birds in the trees." "I do not see any nests," said Marcella. "Do you think that there are birds there, Quintus?" 3. "When the boat was being carried into the sea," said the teacher, "the great waves began to fill with water the baskets which the sailors had placed on the shore."

EXERCISE LXIII

THE THIRD OR E-CONJUGATION (continued)

rapiō

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	rapior	rapi-mur	rapiar	rapiā-mur
2d person	raperis	rapi-mini	rapiāris	rapiā-mini
	rapere		rapiāre	
3d person	rapi-tur	rapi-un-tur	rapiā-tur	rapi-an-tur

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	rapiē-bar	rapiē-bā-mur	raperer	raperēmur
2d person	rapiē-bāris	rapiē-bā-mini	raperēris	raperē-mini
	rapiē-bāre		raperēre	
3d person	rapiē-bā-tur	rapiē-bān-tur	raperētur	raperentur

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	rapiar	rapiēmur
2d person	rapiēris	rapiēmini
	rapiēre	
3d person	rapiētur	rapientur

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	rapere	rapi-mini

PRESENT INFINITIVE

rapi

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, F., nation, tribe. **noctū, adverb, at night, by night.**
rēx, rēgis, M., king, chief.
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, undique, adverb, on all sides.
sustentus, sustain, endure.

NOTE. One-syllable masculines and feminines of the third declension ending in -s or -x preceded by a consonant (as **gēns** above) have in the plural I-stem endings. Compare also **nox** (Exercise LVI) and **lūx** (Exercise LVIII).

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Rēx hostium, cum cōgnōvisset ab imperātōre nostrō frūmentum undique rapī, militēs fortis mīsit, ut villās custōdīrent. 2. Lupī fortasse impetum canum sustinēre nōn poterunt; vērator enim dixit lupōs omnis vehementer canēs timēre. 3. Cum Indī fūrtim per agrōs iter facerent, nullius canis vōx ab agricolīs audita est. 4. Quis putat nōs hostium impetum decem diēs sustinēre posse?

B. A Poor Hiding Place

"Olim," inquit avus noster, "agricolae pauci in silvam iter celeriter fēcērunt, ignique cōsūmpsērunt tabernācula quōrundam Indōrum, quī undique ex agrīs ovīs equōsque rapuerant; tum laeti domum rediērunt. Paulō post autem Indī multi noctū properāvērunt ē silvā, et subitō in cuiusdam agricolae villam impetum ācrem fēcērunt. Agricola, cum filii fortiter pugnārent, uxōrem liberōsque in latebris tūtis collocābat. Tum, cum vidēret impetum Indōrum sustinēri nōn posse, unā cum filiis ē villā fūgit. Mātre liberōsque cēterōs Indī invenire nōn potuērunt. Sed ūnum cēpērunt puerum parvum, quī in cūnis latuerat; quem igitur dūxērunt in silvam rēgīque omnium gentium dedērunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. When the fish were being thrown from the boat upon the sand, the tired sailor ordered the fat boys to carry to a safe place the baskets, which were being broken by the force of the waves. 2. Much excited by these things, the chiefs of these tribes wanted to kill all the farmers who were living in the valley. 3. On all sides the soldiers threw fire into the tents, but they were not able to find any Indians.

B. 1. When the sturdy sailor heard this, he said that there were eight axes in the boat, and that he was willing to fight. 2. "We withstood the attack bravely for a long time," said the soldier; "for we thought that our general was hurrying from the shore with all the sailors." 3. "Let's lead the sheep also into the yard," said Quintus. "I am afraid of the bears which the hunter saw in the woods yesterday." 4. "When we had traveled far by night," said the brave farmer, "suddenly we saw a great light, and thought that the sailors were burning the farmhouses."

EXERCISE LXIV

IRREGULAR VERB

fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made, become

INDICATIVE MOOD		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD			
PRESENT TENSE					
	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	fiō	[fimus]		fiam	fiāmus
2d person	fis	[fitis]		fiās	fiātis
3d person	fit	fiunt		fiat	fiant

IMPERFECT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	fiēbam	fiēbāmus	fierem	fierēmus
2d person	fiēbās	fiēbātis	fierēs	fierētis
3d person	fiēbat	fiēbant	fieret	fierent

FUTURE TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	fiam	fiēmus
2d person	fiēs	fiētis
3d person	fiet	fient

IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	fi	fite

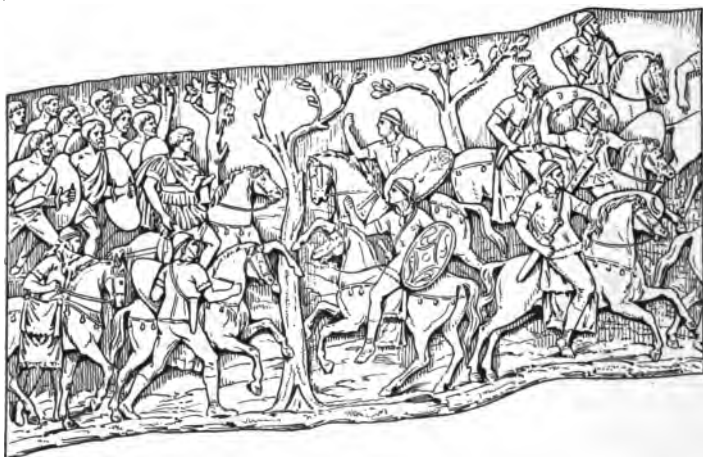
REMARK. The forms *finus* and *fitis* are put in square brackets because they are not in common use.

NOTE 1. *Fiō* ("be made," "become"), despite its largely active formation, is logically the passive of *faciō* ("make"). It thus happens that *faciō* utilizes the above forms of *fiō*, instead of working out its own corresponding regular passive forms; e.g., *Cum pāx fieret*, *When peace was being made*. In the perfect tenses, *fiō* in turn utilizes the passive forms of *faciō* (as, *factus sum*, etc.).

NOTE 2. Just as with the verb *sum* (see Exercise XIV), a predicate noun or adjective is often found with *fiō*; e.g., *Mārcus fit rēx puerōrum*, *Marcus is made king of the boys*.

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

This fourth principal part of the verb is already familiar from its use in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the passive. It can of course be used also apart from these formations; e.g., *vocātus, -a, -um* (*having been*) *called*; *habitus, -a, -um* (*having been*) *had*; etc.



EQUITĒS

This illustration shows another carving on the monument referred to in connection with Exercise LIII.

MODEL SENTENCE

Nāvibus igni cōsūmptis, exercitus noster statim ad silvam iter fēcit, When the ships had been burned (*lit.* the ships having been burned), our army marched at once to the forest.

RULE. *A noun in the ablative case, with a participle in agreement, may be used to tell the circumstances under which something happens. This construction is known as the Ablative Absolute.*

REMARK. The ablative absolute of the model sentence simply provides another way of saying **Cum nāvēs igni cōsūmptae essent**, and in the English translation it is best rendered (as above) by a clause introduced by "when." All ablative absolutes are better translated in some such way as this; but until the new construction has become somewhat familiar, it may be found helpful to use the literal rendering also.

VOCABULARY

eques, -itis, m., *horseman.*
equō vectus, -a, -um, *on horse-back.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand.*
maestus, -a, -um, *sad.*

in mātīmōnium dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, *marry.*
paene, *adverb, almost.*
primō, *adverb, at first.*
sine, *preposition, used with the ablative case, without.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Ursā occisā, nauta per silvam properāvit, et in itinere vēnātōrem quendam convēnit. **2.** Quod cum fieret, pueri malī sīmia caudam abscidere parābant. **3.** Is agricola fortasse fiet imperātor omnium exercituum, quia

sine eō herī impetus hostium sustinēri nōn potuit. 4. Cum bellum annōs septem gestum esset, omnēs equitēs, quī primō fortiter pugnāverant, subitō ad hostium exercitum trāsiērunt.

B. The Luckless Schoolmaster

Olim magister quidam volēbat in mātrimonium dūcere filiam agricolae obēsī, quī multōs agrōs equōsque habēbat. Cum autem puella dixisset sē nōlle, magister maestus noctū equō vectus domum redibat. Lūx lūnae erat parva, et subitō ex arborum umbrīs ērūpit magnus eques āter. Magister primō putāvit equitem sine capite esse; tum vehementer commōtus vidit eum caput in manū ferre. Itaque perterritus fugere coepit. Sed eques quoque cucurrit, subitōque caput magnā vī in magistrī caput iēcit; quī miser paene mortuus in terram cecidit, neque eum māne agricolae invenire potuērunt. Vōcem magistrī in villis audiverant, sed nōluerant eum adiuvāre, quia omnēs equitem ātrum vehementer timēbant.

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. This sailor wants to be made king. Do not help him. 2. Without horsemen we cannot guard one farmer's sheep. 3. When the boat had almost been broken by a great wave, the sailors at first thought that we could not be carried to the ship. 4. The Indians would steal horses on all sides; then, when the farmers had been called, they would flee quickly into the forest.

B. 1. "The sailor's son was sad," said Marcus, "because he wanted to marry the general's daughter, and had learned that her father was unwilling." 2. "We were sending back the same boy to catch the little wolf," said the farmer. "But suddenly there came from the forest a

hunter on horseback who had caught the little wolf with (his) hands and killed its mother with arrows." 3. When the water had been carried into the ship, the sailors themselves bought grain, and at once prepared to cross the river; for they feared the violence of the Indians, who often come to this place at night to capture the children of the farmers and steal their horses and sheep.

EXERCISE LXV

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In Latin, as in English, there are three degrees of comparison, namely Positive, Comparative, and Superlative; *e.g.*,

altus, altior, altissimus, tall, taller, tallest (very tall).

fortis, fortior, fortissimus, brave, braver, bravest (very brave).

Adjectives in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the positive. And in the formation of the comparative they retain or drop the *e* according as it is retained or dropped in the declension of the positive; *e.g.*,

miser, miserior, miserrimus.

piger, pigrior, pigerrimus; so acer, âter, and pulcher.

The comparatives and superlatives of some adjectives are very irregular:

bonus, melior, optimus.

multi, plûrês, plûrimi.

magnus, maior, maximus.

parvus, minor, minimus.

malus, peior, pessimus.

Superlatives are declined in the same way as *bonus*. The declension of the comparative is as follows:

altior, -ior, -ius, taller

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	altior	altior	altius
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōris
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōrī
Acc.	altiōrem	altiōrem	altius
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōre

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōrum	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus

NOTE. **Plūrēs** (the comparative of **multi**) has some I-stem endings, namely **-ium** throughout the genitive, and occasionally **-is** (for **-ēs**) in the accusative of the masculine and feminine. But the neuter nominative and accusative is **plūra**. See Summary of Forms, page 196.

VOCABULARY

gladius, -i, m., sword.

pervenīō, pervenire, pervēnī,
perventum, arrive, come.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Iūlia pulchra est; ego autem putō Claudiam esse pulchriōrem. 2. Cum in hostis impetus ācerimus fieret, imperātor ipse equō vectus gladiō nautās duōs occidit. 3. Nam manū ipsā lupum maximum paene occidit. 4. Puellās pulcherrimās frātrēs nostrī in mātirimōnium dūcent. 5. Sine meō gladiō optimō in castra hostium pervenire nōn poterō.

B. The Raiders Punished

"Ōlim," inquit avia mea, "Indī in cymbīs plūrimīs flūmen nostrum trānsiērunt, multisque agricolīs occīsīs, undique villās ignī cōsūmere coepērunt. Subitō autem trēs vērātōrēs, quī fūrtim ē silvā vēnerant, Indōs occidērunt paucōs, quī cymbās custōdiēbant, cymbāsque ipsās paene omnis saxīs frēgērunt. Quibus rēbus factīs, cum vidērent Indōs cēterōs ad ripam properāre, vērātōrēs quandam cymbam cēpērunt parvam, et celeriter ad insulam minimam trānsiērunt. Tum Indī, quī iam domum redire nōn poterant, vehementer commōtī vidērunt ad flūmen currere equitēs nostrōs, quī per silvam iter celeriter fēcerant, ut agricolās adiuvārent. Itaque hostēs perterritī sē in aquam iēcērunt. Paucī ad insulās pervēnērunt, et ā vērātōribus sunt occīsī; plūrēs autem ab equitibus captī in castra ad imperātōrem ductī sunt."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Let us seize the larger swords ; meanwhile the boys will throw the smaller into the sea. 2. When the kings of the better tribes had arrived, the sailors could not withstand the attack of the enemy's horsemen. 3. A little later the voice of the poor hunter was heard in the woods. Then we all climbed at once into a very tall tree ; for we thought that he was being killed by bears. 4. I did not hear that any Indians were living in the caves.

B. 1. "The tired sailors, who had long withstood the force of a very great storm," said the teacher, "now wanted, together with the farmers, to cross over to the island." 2. Then said the sailor to the boys, "I think that the Indians do the same thing ; for they often journey many days on horseback without grain and water." 3. "When this was learned," said the soldier, "our general

at once ordered us to march from the camp to the shore and make a very fierce attack by night upon the ships of the enemy."

EXERCISE LXVI

THE FOURTH OR Ī-CONJUGATION

audiō

		PASSIVE VOICE	
		INDICATIVE MOOD	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
		PRESENT TENSE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
1st per.	audior	audimur	audiar audiāmur
2d per.	audiris	audimini	audiāris audiāmini
	audire		audiāre
3d per.	auditur	audiuntur	audiātur audiantur
		IMPERFECT TENSE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
1st per.	audiēbar	audiēbāmur	audirer audirēmur
2d per.	audiēbāris	audiēbāmini	audirēris audirēmini
	audiēbare		audirēre
3d per.	audiēbātur	audiēbantur	audirētur audirentur
		FUTURE TENSE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
1st per.	audiar	audiēmur	
2d per.	audiēris	audiēmini	
	audiēre		
3d per.	audiētur	audientur	
		IMPERATIVE MOOD: PRESENT TENSE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
2d person	audire	audimini	
		PRESENT INFINITIVE	
		audiri	

VOCABULARY

castellum, -i, n., <i>fort.</i>	facile, adverb, <i>easily, without</i>
apud, preposition, used	<i>difficulty.</i>
with the accusative case,	haud procul, adverbial
<i>among, at the house of.</i>	phrase, <i>not far away.</i>
libenter, adverb, <i>gladly,</i>	
<i>readily.</i>	

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Adverbs, like adjectives, have three degrees of comparison; *e.g.*,

longē, longius, longissimē, *far, farther, farthest (very far).*
 fortiter, fortius, fortissimē, *bravely, more bravely, most bravely (very bravely).*

Learn also the comparison of the following adverbs:

ācritēr, ācrius, ācerrimē.	facile, facilius, facillimē.
celeriter, celerius, celerrimē.	libenter, libentius, libentissimē.

REMARK 1. Note that the adverbs *ācritēr* and *celeriter* are derived from adjectives in -er (namely *ācer*, *celer*), and that they form the superlative accordingly (see Exercise LXV).

REMARK 2. Observe that the comparative of an adverb is regularly the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the corresponding adjective; *e.g.*, *ācrius*, *fortius*, etc.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

- A. 1. Ita in silvīs ursae et lupī facillimē inveniuntur.
2. Eques primō perterritus paene in ignem cecidit; tum autem fortiter in validum vēnātōrem impetum fēcit



CASTELLUM

This ruined fort is found in Palestine.

3. Libērōrum corbulae nostris¹ manibus frūmentō complētae erant. 4. Sine exercitū maiōre imperātor longius iter facere nōn poterit. 5. Undique invenientur agricolae maesti, quōrum liberī et equī ab Indīs rapti sunt.

B. The Escape of the Captive

"Quādam in villā," inquit nauta, "habitābat puella parva ūnā cum mātē et sorōribus tribus. Ōlim, cum agricolae omnēs longissimē in agrōs issent, subitō ē latebrīs ērūpērunt Indi plūrimī, quī impetum ācerrimum in villās fēcērunt. Māter et filiae cēterae facile ē villā fūgērunt ad castellum parvum, quod haud procul in flūminis ripā collocātum erat; ea autem puella pūpam invenire nōn potuit, nec cum cēteris fūgit. Quae igitur ab hostibus capta in silvam longē ducta est, ibique trīs annōs cum Indīs habitāvit; tum autem equum optimum fūrtim rapuit, et per noctem celeriter vecta, māne domum pervēnit. Māter, quae diū puellam mortuam putābat, laeta vocāvit filiās cēterās (quae interim in mātīmōnium ductae erant), ut audīrent omnia, quae vīderat soror et fēcērat, cum apud Indōs habitāret."

II. Translate into Latin: X.

A. 1. While this was being done among the Indians, the farmers were placing a camp not far away in the woods. 2. This fort will be more easily taken; for the soldiers are few, and they will not be able long to withstand the attack of the Indians. 3. The voices of the worst chiefs of these tribes will be heard gladly by you all. 4. Whom did the farmer's wife send at night to warn the soldiers who were guarding the fort?

¹ When a possessive adjective precedes the noun it modifies, the word "own" often needs to be added in the English translation; e.g., "my (own)," "our (own)," etc.

B. 1. "Did the general say that he was afraid of the Indians?" asked the hunter. "He said that he was not afraid himself," answered Marcus, "but that no army could withstand the attack of all the tribes." ~~X~~2. "Fight more fiercely," cried the general; "I have learned that numerous (*lit.* very many) Indians are hurrying through the woods on horseback. Without them the enemy cannot withstand our attack." 3. "Our soldiers are very lazy," said my father; "for they often hide in the forest, and are not willing to carry water to the camp."

EXERCISE LXVII

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The present participle of Latin verbs is active in meaning. It is declined as follows:

vocāns, calling

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc. Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia	
Gen.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium	
Dat.	vocanti	vocanti	vocantibus	vocantibus	
Acc.	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantia	
			vocantis		
Abl.	vocante	vocante	vocantibus	vocantibus	

Inflect in the same way:

habēns, -entis, *having*.
mittēns, -entis, *sending*.
rapiēns, -ientis, *seizing*.
audiēns, -ientis, *hearing*.

iēns, euntis, *going*.
ferēns, -entis, *carrying*.
nōlēns, -entis, *being unwilling*.
volēns, -entis, *being willing*.

VOCABULARY

āmittō, āmittere, āmisī,	postrēmō, adverb, <i>at last.</i>
āmissus, <i>lose.</i>	urbs, urbis, F., <i>city.</i>
mulier, -leris, F., <i>woman.</i>	vir, virī, M., <i>man, hus-</i>
colōnus, -ī, M., <i>colonist.</i>	<i>band.</i>

REMARK. For the declension of *urbs*, see the note on *gēns* in Exercise LXIII.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Tum ego perterritus Indōs pessimōs per agrōs celerrimē venientēs vīdī. 2. Quā vōce audītā, agricolae irātī ācrius in virum obēsū impetum fēcērunt. 3. Nam hostēs, cum equitēs nostrōs per silvam fortissimē properantēs audīvissent, subitō fūgērunt. 4. Militibus ex urbe euntibus datī sunt gladii meliōres. 5. Imperātor, cum cōgnōvisset Indōs haud procul castra collocāre, cum eis pācem facere nōn diūtius volēbat.

B. *A Wife Regained*

Ōlim Indī, quī prope castellum parvum habitābant, colōnōs parābant occidere. Itaque agricolae multi, cum id cōgnōvisset, cum uxōribus liberisque ad urbem quandam statim properāvērunt. Cēterī autem, quī fortiōrēs erant, ē villis fugere diū nōlēbant; sed postrēmō, cum iam undique Indī occiderent colōnōs villāsque igni cōsūmerent, maestī ad eandem urbem iter facere coepērunt omnēs. Quō in itinere mulier quaedam, cuius vir gladium āmiserat, ab Indīs capta est. Quam cum ad rēgem dūxissent, hostēs celerrimē in agrōs rediērunt, ut ovīs quoque et equōs raperent. Interim agricola, uxōre captā, colōnōs ex urbe noctū vocāvit; quī cum Indīs ācerrimē pugnāvērunt rēgemque

occidērunt ipsum. Ita mulier postrēmō laeta in urbem cum virō pervēnit.

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. When the colonists on horseback arrived at (*lit.* to) the river, they very gladly received the swords. 2. The cries of the hunters going through the woods could very easily be heard. 3. We shall find among the Indians almost all the children who have been lost from these towns. 4. When this had been done, the tired women found sitting under a tree the boy whom their husbands had brought from the city. 5. At first the king was willing to send back the whole army to the camp; but finally he ordered the horsemen to make a fiercer attack upon the enemy.

B. 1. "I shall not return without the children," said the hunter to the sad mother. "The Indians have traveled many miles through the valley, but we shall soon capture them." 2. "When we saw the drunken sailor hiding under the benches," said Marcus, "we at once called soldiers from the fort." 3. "On all sides the enemy are sending Indians into the fields," said the hunter, "so that our horses may all be killed." 4. "When our general had sent the wives and children of the brave colonists to a larger fort," said the women, "he marched three days through the hills, and suddenly made a fierce attack on the enemy's largest city."

EXERCISE LXVIII

IRREGULAR NOUNS

deus, M., god**domus, F., house, home**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	deus	dei, dii, di	domus	domūs
Gen.	dei	deōrum deum	domūs	domuum domōrum
Dat.	deō	deīs, diīs, diīs	domui, domō	domibus
Acc.	deum	deōs	domum	domōs, domūs
Abl.	deō	deīs, diīs, diīs	domō, domū	domibus

VOCABULARY

ORDINAL NUMERALS

primus, -a, -um, first.**nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.****secundus, -a, -um, second.****decimus, -a, -um, tenth.****tertius, -a, -um, third.****quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.****legiō, -ōnis, F., company, regiment.****quintus, -a, -um, fifth.****sextus, -a, -um, sixth.****in fugam dō, dare, dedi, datus, put to flight.****septimus, -a, -um, seventh.****octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.****nostrī, -ōrum, M., our men.**

MODEL SENTENCE

Vēnātor in spēluncā latuit, nē ab Indīs caperētur, The hunter hid in the cave so as not to be captured by the Indians.

RULE. *In purpose clauses the negative of ut is nē.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. **Dī nōs adiuvant ; hostēs enim perterriti flūmen trāseunt, neque diūtius ab eis domūs nostrae igni cōsumentur.** 2. **Legiō tertia ūnā cum equitibus multis fortis-**

simē ē castris ērūpit, hostibusque celeriter in fugam datis, oppidum facile cēpit. 3. Quod cum auditum esset, mulier vehementer commōta filiō patris gladium dedit. 4. Colōni cymbis vecti ad insulam noctū trānsiērunt ibique cēpērunt Indōs trēs, quōs in herbā latentēs invēnērunt.

B. An Ambuscade

"Cum bellum diū gestum esset cum Indis," inquit avia mea, "frumentumque omne ex agris raptum esset, saepe colōnōrum miserōrum equi quoque ab hostibus capiēbantur. Sed colōni nōlēbant pācem fieri, et libenter cum militibus per vallis collisque iter faciēbant, ut tabernacula castraque Indōrum igni cōsūmerent. Olim, cum agricolae plūrimī unā cum equitibus paucis per silvam properārent ad flūmen, cuius in ripā Indi castra parva collocāverant, subitō ē latebris hostēs ērūpērunt, sagittisque sex colōnōs duōsque equitēs occidērunt. Quā rē commōti equitēs fortissimē fēcērunt impetum, hostēsque celeriter in fugam dedērunt. Indi autem facile ad castra pervēnērunt, nec eōs capere potuērunt nostri."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. While these things were being done, the general marched quickly through the valley, so that the sixth regiment might not be captured by the enemy. 2. Finally the Indians were put to flight, and their women and children hurried to a smaller city. 3. The women very readily gave arrows to certain men who had lost (their) swords. 4. When they learned that eight children of the colonists were living among the Indians, brave hunters traveled on horseback eighteen miles through the forest to the enemy's camp. Four children were thus captured by our men and sent back to town, but the others could not be found.

B. 1. "When we had cut off the bear's head with an ax," said Quintus to the girls, "I easily carried it in (*lit.* by) my hand to the river. There we saw a sailor catching fish. He wanted to cross over to certain large rocks; and so we took him into our boat, and carried him with us to the island. Then we hurried home." 2. "Where is your dog, boys?" asked the hunter. "I think there is a wolf in the fields, and I have not seen your dog to-day." 3. "Without horsemen," said the general, "the enemy will not be able to put our men to flight. I have, therefore, sent the eighth regiment into the fields, so that the farmers' horses might not be stolen by the Indians." 4. The soldier who yesterday married the chief's daughter thought that peace could thus be made very easily with the Indians.

EXERCISE LXIX

DEPONENT VERBS

In all conjugations there are verbs, otherwise regular, which (aside from participles, etc.) are conjugated only in the passive, and yet have active meaning throughout. Such verbs are known as Deponents; see Summary of Forms, page 212. The following Vocabulary includes deponents representative of all conjugations.

VOCABULARY

moror, morārī, morātus sum, <i>delay, tarry, linger.</i> 1	patior, pati, passus sum, al- <i>low, suffer.</i> Often con- 3
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, <i>promise.</i> 2	strued with the accusative and present infinitive.
proficiscor, proficisci, profec- tus sum, <i>set out, start.</i>	adorior, adoriri, adortus sum, <i>attack.</i>

REMARK. The principal parts of a deponent verb are three instead of four because the perfect indicative of such a verb involves in its own formation the perfect passive participle, which therefore need not be given separately.

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Quibus rēbus ^{having been banished} cōgnītīs, imperātor statim cum equitibus plūrimīs profectus est. 2. Mārcus, cum prope imperātōris domum morārētur, legiōnem nōnam ē cymbīs per fluctūs ad harēnam properantem vidit. 3. Vēnātor, quī liberīs ursam parvam pollicitus erat, herī in silvā quendam nautam convēnit, quī in spēluncā trīs ursās parvās viderat. 4. Quod cum cōgnitum esset, mātres nōn diūtius puerōs in agrīs lūdere patiēbantur. 5. Quā vōce imperātōris auditā, nostrī omnēs fortissimē rīvum trānsiērunt, ut castra hostium adorirentur.

B. A Decisive Battle

“Cum multōs diēs libenter iter fēcissēmus neque potuissēmus hostīs invenīre,” inquit mīles fortis, “postrēmō noster imperātor ipse Indōs quōsdam cōvēnit, quī dixerunt hostēs perterritōs in silvā latēre. Quā rē auditā, castra haud procul collocāvimus, vēnātōrēsque statim in silvam missi sunt, ut hostium latebrās invenīrent. Quod cum factum esset, hostēs, quī putābant omnem exercitum nostrum iam in silvā esse, celerrimē ērūpērunt ē latebrīs, vēnātōrēsque facillimē in fugam dedērunt; cum autem undique ē silvā currerent in agrōs, ut ibi vēnātōrēs fugientīs occiderent, subitō imperātor noster equitēs iussit in eōs impetum ācerrimum facere. Ita hostēs plūrimī ā nostrīs occisi sunt, cēterique ab Indīs sunt capti. Tum imperātor, urbibus multis igni cōnsūptīs, laetus cum exercitū domum rediit.”

II. Translate into Latin:

- deponere* *vat*
 A. 1. The enemy were perhaps helped by the gods; for we attacked their camp most bravely, but could not put them to flight. 2. In the houses of the best men there was peace. 3. The enemy were alarmed by the light of the moon, and did not set out from the city. 4. The general was unwilling to allow the seventh regiment to delay in the forest. 5. Let's promise birds to the girls. 6. Don't give axes to the boys.

B. 1. "When these things were heard, the women gladly hurried into the farmhouse," said the hunter; "for they were frightened by the force of the storm." 2. "We finally arrived at (*lit.* to) a suitable place," said the horseman. "Then the colonists said that they were willing to go themselves into the camp of the Indians; for there was no moon, and black clouds were in the sky." 3. "The tribes of these chiefs will not withstand the attack of our men," said the sailor; "for the hunters will hurry through the woods by night to help us."

EXERCISE LXX

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

hic, haec, hoc, *this*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Abl.	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

REMARK. These two pronouns are often used together in the same sentence to mark a contrast; *e.g.*, *Haec urbs magna, illud oppidum parvum est, This city is large, that town is small.*

VOCABULARY

cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactus, cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *force, compel.* Construed with the accusative and present infinitive. *attempt, try.* Often construed with the present infinitive.
 domī, *at home.* posteā, *adverb, afterward.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Nautae hās bācās edere nōlunt. Illa ōva eīs dēmus, nē gallinās ipsās rapere velint. 2. Posteā igitur vēnātōrēs cōgērunt nōs in spēluncā latēre. 3. Nam puer obēsus prīmō fugere cōnātus est; sed postrēmō libenter humī iacuit. 4. Domī sunt māter et pater meus; in illā urbe sunt frātrēs et sorōrēs. 5. Celeriter ad litus pervēnīre cōnābāmur; sed saepe morārī cōactī sumus, nē liberī in silvā āmitterentur. Māne autem ad mare dēfessī pervēnimus.

B. An Indian Victory

"*Ōlim*," inquit avus noster, "cum bellum miserrimum diū gestum esset, liberique agricolarum undique ab Indis caperentur, subito mane prope oppidum quoddam auditī sunt hostēs, qui statim domōs colōnōrum ācrit̄er adortī sunt, ignisque iacere coepērunt. Vōcibus Indōrum auditīs, mulierēs perterritae cum liberis fūgērunt in domum maximam, quam putābant hostis capere nōn posse; interim in viis eārum virī validi cum Indis fortissimē pugnābant. Sed mox undique domūs colōnōrum igni cōsūmēbantur, nec diūtius impetus hostium sustinēri poterat. Itaque, cum iam colōni paene omnēs humi mortuī iacērent, hostēs omnia rapuērunt quae invenire facile poterant, laetique in silvās rediērunt unā cum liberis, quōrum matrēs occiderant."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. Let's try now to catch this wolf. Afterward the hunter will easily kill the bears. 2. What compels you to delay longer, my son? Why are you hiding at home, and not preparing to set out for (*lit.* to) the ship? 3. My father did not allow the boys to go. 4. The fourth regiment marched three miles and suddenly attacked the Indians.

B. 1. "This same hunter will to-morrow kill the chief of that tribe also," said the sailor. "He has himself promised (it)." 2. "Those bad boys are trying to force the smaller dog to run into the water," said Julia. "A little later they will be punished." 3. "I see a taller tree," said Quintus. "Let's climb up into it and throw branches upon the heads of those lazy soldiers whom you see lying in the shade not far away." 4. "When we heard the hunters on horseback running through the field yesterday," said the farmer, "we thought that the horsemen of the enemy were preparing to attack our town."

EXERCISE LXXI

INDEFINITE PRONOUN

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, some, any

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	aliqui	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquo	aliqua	aliquo

PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquorum	aliquarum	aliquorum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquos	aliquas	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

NOTE. The above pronoun is here treated as an adjective. It may also be used as a noun, meaning "some one, something," "any one, anything," etc. When so used, **aliquis** replaces **aliqui** (nominative singular), and **aliquid** replaces **aliquod** (nominative and accusative singular), and the feminine is lacking throughout.

REMARK. Distinguish between the use of the adjectives **aliqui** and **ullus** (Exercise LXII). Both words may mean "any," but **ullus** is used mostly in negative clauses.

VOCABULARY

aut, conjunction, *or*.
iste, ista, istud, *this, that*.
numquam, adverb, *never*.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum,
follow.

NOTE. The declension of *iste* is the same as that of *ille* (Exercise LXX).

REMARK. The conjunction *aut* is sometimes repeated in the form *aut . . . aut*. The meaning then is "either . . . or."

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English:

A. 1. Vidētisne aliquid in silvā? Nōs aut ursam aut lupum in agrō vidēmus. 2. Istōs Indōs nōn timēbam. Eī enim colōnōs numquam occidere cōnāti erant. 3. Imperātor, cum cōgnōvisset aliquās mulierēs ab Indīs cōgī liberōs in ignis iacere, statim ad oppidum hostium cum equitibus profectus est, exercitumque omnem sequi iussit. 4. Hīc rēx fiet imperātor exercituum omnium. Ille autem rēx equitēs dūcet.

B. *The Settlers Surprised*

"Agricola quīdam," inquit nauta, "olīm longē in agrōs ūnā cum colōnis cēteris ierat, equōsque iam in locum tūtum dūcēbat, nē ab Indis raperentur. Cum autem in itinere morārentur colōnī, subitō in eōrum villās hostēs impetum ācerimum fēcērunt. Tum ille vir, cum vōcēs Indōrum audivisset, colōnōs cēterōs sequi iussit, ipseque celerrimē domum properāvit. Sed interim hostēs, quī ignis iēcērant in domōs aliquās, undique mulierēs liberōsque occidēbant. Itaque agricola, cum postrēmō domum pervēnisset, uxorem filiamque humi iacentēs invēnit mortuās; nam uxor sagittā occisa erat, caput autem filiae saxō erat frāctum. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, colōnī omnibus ex urbibus statim in ūnum locum convēnērunt, multisque cum equitibus celeriter in silvam profecti sunt. Ita cum diēs multōs iter fēcissent, subitō noctū adortī sunt Indōrum oppidum; moxque istī hostēs ā nostris omnēs aut capti aut occisi sunt."

II. Translate into Latin:

A. 1. Come into the tents, boys. *We* have bought better apples. 2. Let's follow the dogs; for I think that there are little wolves in the cave. 3. The cook said that he never allowed the monkey to sit on (his) shoulder. 4. These soldiers will guard the sheep, and will not linger on the river bank. 5. Marcus went with us to the stream, and I almost caught a very large fish.

B. 1. "Let's buy some dog or raven," said Marcus. "*I* prefer doves," replied Claudia; "for they never frighten the children." 2. "Afterward we shall see the fifth regiment," said the hunter. "For the general will not allow it to cross the stream without boats." 3. "Did you see any one going through the valley?" asked the general. "I saw no Indians," replied the tired colonist; "but there were many horses under the trees." 4. "Often have I fought fiercely with the enemy," said the brave soldier to the boys; "but now I sit gladly at home."

EXERCISE LXXII

THE GERUNDIVE

The gerundive is a passive participle conveying the idea of necessity or need, *e.g.*,

vocandus, -a, -um, *to be called.* rapiendus, -a, -um, *to be seized.*

habendus, -a, -um, *to be had.* audiendus, -a, -um, *to be heard.*
mittendus, -a, -um, *to be sent.*

Ordinarily the gerundive is used in connection with a form of *sum*, and the translation varies somewhat; *e.g.*,

Mulier vocanda est, *The woman must be called.*

Putō mulierem vocandam esse, *I think that the woman should be called.*

VOCABULARY

ORDINAL NUMERALS

undecimus, -a, -um, *eleventh.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, *twelfth.*

tertius (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, *thirteenth.*

quārtus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, *fourteenth.*

quintus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, *fifteenth.*

sextus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, *sixteenth.*

septimus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, *seventeenth.*

duodēvicēsīmus, -a, -um, *eighteenth.*

undēvicēsīmus, -a, -um, *nineteenth.*

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, *twentieth.*

dē, preposition, used with the ablative case, *about, concerning.*

petō, petere, petīvi, petitus, *look for, seek.*

pugna, -ae, f., *battle.*

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, *leave, desert.*

simul, adverb, *at the same time.*

READING LESSON

I. Translate into English :

A. 1. Simul rēx istārum gentium omnium profectus est, ut pācem peteret. 2. Pāx petenda est; hostēs enim dē hāc pugnā iam audivērunt. 3. Militēs dixerunt sē putāre pācem petendam esse. 4. Numquam tē sequēmur, imperātor pessime. 5. Aut hostīs adoriāmur aut ad lītus properēmus.

B. A Bold Abduction

"Domus nostra," inquit colōnus, "in ripā flūminis maximī collocāta erat, unāque cum frātre et sorōribus prope aquam saepe lūdēbam. Ōlim in cymbā parvā vidimus Indōs trēs sedentēs, quī piscis multōs ē flūmine capiēbant.



PUGNA

A modern artist's conception of the attack of a Roman army upon a walled town.

Paulō post autem, cum iam in harēnā laeti lūderēmus, Indi, piscibus relictis, ad ripam fūrtim pervēnērunt, frātreque subitō rapuērunt nostrum. Quā rē perterriti magnā vōce patrem vocāvimus. Cum autem is, vehementer commōtus, ex agrīs ad flūmen cucurrisset, Indi iam ad quandam insulam parvā cum frātre pervēnerant. Itaque, militibus quoque vocātis, agricolae omnēs multis cymbis vecti celeriter ad insulam eandem trāsiērunt. Interim autem Indi in maiōrem insulam fūgerant, in quā erat silva ātra et spēluncae multae; itaque numquam postea frātre vidimus."

II. Translate into Latin :

A. 1. The eighteenth regiment should be helped; for a very fierce attack is being made upon it by the enemy. 2. In the battle which we saw there, the bravest soldiers were killed by our men, and the others were easily put to flight. 3. The king said that hunters must at once be sent into the woods, so that the enemy might not be able to escape (*lit.* flee) stealthily from (their) camp. 4. Do you think that these stones must be carried to the shore and thrown into the sea? Where did the women find them?

B. 1. "Afterward," said the farmer, "we were sitting at home in the shade. But the children, who were looking for eggs, soon called us to see the baskets which they had filled." 2. "At the same time," said the soldier to the boys, "the enemy were hurrying to the river. But about this battle you will soon hear at school." 3. "I saw some one stealing a horse from the field," said the farmer. "Run, boys; let's all try to catch him." 4. "We thought that these Indians must at once be captured," said the general; "for the other tribes were now setting out from the larger cities to help them."

SUMMARY OF FORMS

(To round out the Summary, certain forms are included which have not been treated in the Exercises of this book. All such additional forms are printed in *italics*, so that they can readily be distinguished from those which the student has thus far been required to learn.)

NOUNS

THE FIRST OR *Ā*-DECLENSION

mēnsa, F.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	<i>mēnsa</i>	<i>mēnsae</i>
Gen.	<i>mēnsae</i>	<i>mēnsārum</i>
Dat.	<i>mēnsae</i>	<i>mēnsis</i>
Acc.	<i>mēnsam</i>	<i>mēnsās</i>
Abl.	<i>mēnsā</i>	<i>mēnsis</i>

THE SECOND OR *O*-DECLENSION

hortus, M. *puer*, M. *ager*, M. *vir*, M. *mālum*, N.

SINGULAR

Nom.	<i>hortus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>mālum</i>
Gen.	<i>hortī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>mālī</i>
Dat.	<i>hortō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
Acc.	<i>hortum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>mālum</i>
Abl.	<i>hortō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>mālō</i>

PLURAL

Nom.	<i>hortī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>māla</i>
Gen.	<i>hortōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>mālōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>mālīs</i>
Acc.	<i>hortōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>māla</i>
Abl.	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>mālīs</i>

REMARK. Masculines in *-us* have in the singular a special vocative form, as *Mārce*, *coque*, etc. By exception, *filius* and proper nouns in *-ius* abbreviate the vocative (and genitive) singular; *e.g.*, *filii*. So also the genitive of a few neuters in *-ium*.

THE THIRD DECLENSION

Consonant Stems

<i>flōs</i> , M.	<i>arbor</i> , F.	<i>litus</i> , N.
SINGULAR		
Nom. <i>flōs</i>	<i>arbor</i>	<i>litus</i>
Gen. <i>flōris</i>	<i>arboris</i>	<i>litoris</i>
Dat. <i>flōri</i>	<i>arbori</i>	<i>litori</i>
Acc. <i>flōrem</i>	<i>arborem</i>	<i>litus</i>
Abl. <i>flōre</i>	<i>arbore</i>	<i>litore</i>
PLURAL		
Nom. <i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Gen. <i>flōrum</i>	<i>arborum</i>	<i>litorum</i>
Dat. <i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>
Acc. <i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Abl. <i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>

I-Stems

<i>ignis</i> , M.	<i>vallēs</i> , F.	<i>mare</i> , N.	<i>animal</i> , N., <i>living creature</i>
SINGULAR			
Nom. <i>ignis</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
Gen. <i>ignis</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>animalis</i>
Dat. <i>igni</i>	<i>valli</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>animali</i>
Acc. <i>ignem</i>	<i>vallem</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
Abl. <i>igni</i>	<i>valle</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>animali</i>
<i>igne</i>			
PLURAL			
Nom. <i>ignēs</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animalia</i>
Gen. <i>ignium</i>	<i>vallium</i>	—	<i>animalium</i>
Dat. <i>ignibus</i>	<i>vallibus</i>	—	<i>animalibus</i>
Acc. <i>ignis</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animalia</i>
<i>ignēs</i>	<i>vallēs</i>		
Abl. <i>ignibus</i>	<i>vallibus</i>	—	<i>animalibus</i>

REMARK. Aside from the fact that its declension is complete, **animal** differs from **mare** only in that it has dropped the ending -e of the nominative singular. Through the loss of this ending there has arisen quite a large class of neuters with the nominative terminating in -al or -ar.

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

	exercitus, M.		cornū, N., horn	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

THE FIFTH OR Ē-DECLENSION

	diēs, M. (and F.)		rēs, F.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
Dat.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

IRREGULAR NOUNS

	deus, M.	domus, F.	vīs, F.
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	deus	domus	vīs
Gen.	dei	domūs	—
Dat.	deō	domui, domō	—
Acc.	deum	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	domō, domū	vī
		PLURAL	
Nom.	dei, dii, di	domūs	vīrēs
Gen.	deōrum, deum	domuum, domōrum	vīrium
Dat.	deis, diis, dis	domibus	vīribus
Acc.	deōs	domōs, domūs	vīris, vīrēs
Abl.	deis, diis, dis	domibus	vīribus

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, -a, -um

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
Gen.	boni	bonae	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
Dat.	bono	bonae	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
Abl.	bono	bona	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis

miser, -era, -erum

Nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserāe	miserā
Gen.	miseri	miserāe	miseri	miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
Dat.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miseros	miserās	miserā
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris

piger, -gra, -grum

Nom.	piger	pigra	pigrum	pigri	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	pigri	pigrae	pigri	pigrorum	pigrarum	pigrorum
Dat.	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō	pigris	pigris	pigris
Acc.	pigrum	pigram	pigrum	pigros	pigras	pigra
Abl.	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō	pigris	pigris	pigris

THIRD DECLENSION

I-Stems

fortis, -is, -e

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortis	fortis	fortia
				fortēs	fortēs	
Abl.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

ācer, ācris, ācre

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācribus

Consonant Stems*The Present Participle***vocāns**

Nom.	vocāns	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium	vocantium
Dat.	vocantī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
Acc.	vacantem	vacantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Abl.	vacante	vacante	vacante	vacantis	vacantis	vacantibus

*The Comparative***altior, -ior, -ius**

Nom.	altior	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus

plūs

Nom.	—	—	<i>plūs</i>	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	—	—	<i>plūris</i>	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	—	—	—	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	—	—	<i>plūs</i>	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
Abl.	—	—	<i>plūre</i>	plūris	plūris	plūribus

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
altus	altior	altissimus	bonus	melior	optimus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus	magnus	maior	maximus
miser	miserior	miserrimus	maius	peior	pessimus
piger	pigrior	pigerrimus	multi	plūrēs	plūrimī
			parvus	minor	minimus

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
longē	longius	longissimē	diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē	facile	facilius	facillimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē	libenter	libentius	libentissimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē			

NUMERALS

ūnus, -a, -um

SINGULAR			PLURAL			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

NOTE. Eight other adjectives, in the genitive and dative singular, have the same endings as ūnus, namely: *alius*, *alter* (gen. *alterius*); *ūllus*, *nūllus*; *uter* (gen. *utrius*), neuter (gen. *neutrius*); *sōlus*, *tōtus*. Of these *alius* has additional peculiarities: its neuter singular, nominative and accusative, is *aliud*; and in the genitive singular it borrows *alterius* from *alter*.

duo, duae, duo**PLURAL**

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum
Dat.	duobus	duabus	duobus
Acc.	duo	duas	duo
	duos		
Abl.	duobus	duabus	duobus

trēs, trēs, tria**PLURAL**

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	trēs	trēs	tria
Gen.	trium	trium	trium
Dat.	tribus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	trēs	trēs	tria
	trīs	trīs	
Abl.	tribus	tribus	tribus

LIST OF NUMERALS**CARDINAL**

1. ūnus
2. duo
3. trēs
4. quattuor
5. quīnque
6. sex
7. septem
8. octō
9. novem
10. decem
11. ūndecim
12. duodecim
13. tredecim
14. quattuordecim
15. quīndecim
16. sēdecim
17. septendecim
18. duodēvigintī
19. ūndēvigintī
20. vigintī

ORDINAL

- primus
- secundus
- tertius
- quārtus
- quīntus
- sextus
- septimus
- octāvus
- nōnus
- decimus
- ūndecimus
- duodecimus
- tertius decimus
- quārtus decimus
- quīntus decimus
- sextus decimus
- septimus decimus
- duodēvicēsīmus
- ūndēvicēsīmus
- vicēsīmus

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

First Person			Second Person	
	ego		tū	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum nostrī	tuī	vestrum vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person			Third Person	
is, ea, id			Reflexive	
			suī (gen.)	
SINGULAR				
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All Genders
Nom.	is	ea	id	—
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	suī
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	sibi
Acc.	eum	eam	id	sē, sēsē
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	sē, sēsē

PLURAL				
Nom.	eī, īī, ī	eae	ea	—
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	suī
Dat.	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	sibi
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	sē, sēsē
Abl.	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	eīs, īīs, īs	sē, sēsē

NOTE 1. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* serve as the reflexive of the first and second persons.

NOTE 2. The personal pronoun *is, ea, id* may be used also as an adjective meaning "this," or "that."

DEMONSTRATIVE

hic, haec, hoc

ille, illa, illud

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis

NOTE. The demonstrative pronoun *iste, ista, istud* is declined in the same way as *ille*.

INTENSIVE

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

OF IDENTITY

idem, eadem, idem

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	{ eīdem iīdem īdem	caedem	eadem
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	{ eōrundem eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	{ eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	{ eōsdem eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	{ eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quī, quis	quae	quod, quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod, quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, *quis* replaces *quī* (singular), *quid* replaces *quod*, and the feminine is lacking throughout.

The forms of this pronoun are identical with the forms of the interrogative pronoun as given above, excepting that *quis* and *quid* are lacking.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam **aliqui (aliquis), aliqua, ali-**
(quiddam) **quod (aliquid)**

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam	aliquī aliquis	aliqua	aliquod aliquid
G.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	alicui	alicui	alicui
A.	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod aliquid
A.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

N. quīdam	quaedam	quaedam	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G. quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
A. quōdam	quādam	quaedam	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
A. quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

NOTE. Both of these pronouns may be used either as adjectives or as nouns. In the noun use, *quiddam* replaces *quoddam*, *aliquis* replaces *aliqui* (singular), *aliquid* replaces *aliquid*, and the feminine of *aliquis* is lacking throughout.

REGULAR VERBS

THE FIRST OR $\bar{A}$ -CONJUGATION**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	vocō	vocem	vocor	vocer
		vocās	vocēs	vocāris	vocēris
				vocāre	vocēre
		vocat	vocet	vocātur	vocētur
		vocāmus	vocēmus	vocāmur	vocēmur
		vocātis	vocētis	vocāminī	vocēminī
Imperfect	{	vocant	vocent	vocantur	vocentur
		vocābam	vocārem	vocābar	vocārer
		vocābās	vocārēs	vocābāris	vocārēris
				vocābāre	vocārēre
		vocābat	vocāret	vocābātur	vocārētur
		vocābāmus	vocārēmus	vocābāmur	vocārēmur
Future	{	vocābātis	vocārētis	vocābāminī	vocārēminī
		vocābant	vocārent	vocābantur	vocārentur
		vocābō		vocābor	
		vocābis		vocāberis	
				vocābere	
		vocābit		vocābitur	
Perfect	{	vocābimus		vocābimur	
		vocābitis		vocābiminī	
		vocābunt		vocābuntur	
		vocāvī	vocāverim	vocātus sum	vocātus sim
		vocāvistī	vocāveris	vocātus es	vocātus sis
		vocāvit	vocāverit	vocātus est	vocātus sit
Perfect	{	vocāvimus	vocāverimus	vocātī sumus	vocātī simus
		vocāvistis	vocāveritis	vocātī estis	vocātī sitis
		vocāverunt	vocāverint	vocātī sunt	vocātī sint

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	<i>vocāveram</i>	<i>vocāvissem</i>	<i>vocātus eram</i>	<i>vocātus essem</i>
		<i>vocāverās</i>	<i>vocāvisseēs</i>	<i>vocātus erās</i>	<i>vocātus esseēs</i>
		<i>vocāverat</i>	<i>vocāvisset</i>	<i>vocātus erat</i>	<i>vocātus esset</i>
	{	<i>vocāverāmus</i>	<i>vocāvisseēmus</i>	<i>vocātī erāmus</i>	<i>vocātī esseēmus</i>
		<i>vocāverātis</i>	<i>vocāvisseētis</i>	<i>vocātī erātis</i>	<i>vocātī esseētis</i>
		<i>vocāverant</i>	<i>vocāvissent</i>	<i>vocātī erant</i>	<i>vocātī essent</i>
Future Perfect	{	<i>vocāverō</i>		<i>vocātus erō</i>	
		<i>vocāveris</i>		<i>vocātus eris</i>	
		<i>vocāverit</i>		<i>vocātus erit</i>	
	{	<i>vocāverimus</i>		<i>vocātī erimus</i>	
		<i>vocāveritis</i>		<i>vocātī eritis</i>	
		<i>vocāverint</i>		<i>vocātī erunt</i>	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	<i>vocā</i>	<i>vocāte</i>	<i>vocāre</i>	<i>vocāminī</i>
Future	<i>vocātō</i>	<i>vocātōte</i>	<i>vocātor</i>	
	<i>vocātō</i>	<i>vocantō</i>	<i>vocātor</i>	<i>vocantor</i>

PARTICIPLE

Present	<i>vocāns</i>	
Perfect		<i>vocātus, -a, -um</i>
Future	<i>vocātūrus, -a, -um</i>	

INFINITIVE

Present	<i>vocāre</i>	<i>vocārī</i>
Perfect	<i>vocāvisse</i>	<i>vocātus esse</i>
Future	<i>vocātūrus esse</i>	<i>vocātum iri</i>

GERUND

Gen.	<i>vocandī</i>
Dat.	<i>vocandō</i>
Acc.	<i>vocandum</i>
Abl.	<i>vocandō</i>

GERUNDIVE

vocandus, -a, -um

SUPINE

vocātum, vocatū

THE SECOND OR $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

ACTIVE		PASSIVE		
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
	habēs	habeās	habēris	habeāris
	habet	habeat	habēre	habeāre
			habētur	habeātur
	habēmus	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
	habētis	habeātis	habēminī	habeāminī
	habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
Im-perfect	habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
	habēbās	habērēs	habēbāris	habērēris
	habēbat	habēret	habēbāre	habērēre
			habēbātur	habērētur
	habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
	habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāminī	habērēminī
	habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
Future	habēbō		habēbor	
	habēbis		habēberis	
	habēbit		habēbere	
			habēbitur	
	habēbimus		habēbimur	
	habēbitis		habēbiminī	
	habēbunt		habēbuntur	
Perfect	habuī	habuerim	habitus sum	habitus sim
	habuistī	habueris	habitus es	habitus sis
	habuīt	habuerit	habitus est	habitus sit
	habuimus	habuerimus	habiti sumus	habiti simus
	habuistis	habueritis	habiti estis	habiti sitis
	habuērunt	habuerint	habiti sunt	habiti sint

ACTIVE			PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	habueram	habuissem	habitus eram	habitus essem
	habuerās	habuissēs	habitus erās	habitus essēs
	habuerat	habuisset	habitus erat	habitus esset
	habuerāmus	habuissēmus	habiti erāmus	habiti essēmus
	habuerātis	habuissētis	habiti erātis	habiti essētis
	habuerant	habuissent	habiti erant	habiti essent
Future Perfect	habuerō		habitus erō	
	habueris		habitus eris	
	habuerit		habitus erit	
	habuerimus		habiti erimus	
	habueritis		habiti eritis	
	habuerint		habiti erunt	

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	habē	habēte	habēre	habēminī
Future	<i>habētō</i>	<i>habētōte</i>	<i>habētor</i>	
	<i>habētō</i>	<i>habentō</i>	<i>habētor</i>	<i>habentor</i>

PARTICIPLE	
Present	habēns
Perfect	habitus, -a, -um
Future	<i>habitūrus, -a, -um</i>

INFINITIVE	
Present	habēre
Perfect	<i>habuisse</i>
Future	<i>habitūrus esse</i>
	habēri
	<i>habitus esse</i>
	<i>habitum iri</i>

GERUND	
Gen.	<i>habendī</i>
Dat.	<i>habendō</i>
Acc.	<i>habendum</i>
Abl.	<i>habendō</i>
GERUNDIVE	
	habendus, -a, -um

SUPINE
habitum, habitū

THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
		mittit	mittat	mittere	mittāre
	{	mittitur		mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittimini	mittāmini
Imperfect	{	mittunt	mittant	mittuntur	mittantur
		mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
	{	mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbāre	mitterēre
				mittēbātur	mitterētur
		mittēbamus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
Future	{	mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāmini	mitterēmini
		mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbantur	mitterentur
	{	mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
		mittet		mittēre	
Perfect	{	mittētur		mittētur	
		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēmini	
	{	mittent		mittentur	
		misi	miserim	missus sum	missus sim
		misiſti	miseris	missus es	missus sis
Perfect	{	misiſit	miserit	missus est	missus sit
		misiſimus	miserimus	missi sumus	missi simus
		misiſtis	miseritis	missi estis	missi sitis
	{	misiſerunt	miserint	missi sunt	missi sint

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	miseram	misissem	missus eram	missus essem
		miserās	misiassēs	missus erās	missus essēs
		miserat	misiasset	missus erat	missus esset
		miserāmus	misiassēmus	missi erāmus	missi essēmus
		miserātis	misiassētis	missi erātis	missi essētis
		miserant	misiassent	missi erant	missi essent
Future Perfect	{	miserō		missus erō	
		miseris		missus eris	
		miserit		missus erit	
		miserimus		missi erimus	
		miseritis		missi eritis	
		miserint		missi erunt	

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	mitte	mittite	mittere	mittimini
Future	mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
	mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor

		PARTICIPLE
Present	mittēns	
Perfect		missus, -a, -um
Future	missūrus, -a, -um	

		INFINITIVE
Present	mittere	mitti
Perfect	mississe	missus esse
Future	missūrus esse	missum iri

		GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	mittendī		mittendus, -a, -um
Dat.	mittendō		
Acc.	mittendum		
Abl.	mittendō		

SUPINE
missum, missū

THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION (-ĭō VERBS)

rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	rapiō	rapiam	rapior	rapiar
		rapis	apiās	raperis	apiāris
				rapere	apiāre
		rapit	apiat	rapitur	apiātur
		rapimus	apiāmus	rapimur	apiāmur
		rapitis	apiātis	rapimini	apiāmini
Imperfect	{	rapiant	apiant	rapiuntur	apiantur
		rapiebam	raperem	rapiebar	raperer
		rapiebās	raperēs	rapiebāris	raperēris
				rapiebāre	raperēre
		rapiebat	raperet	rapiebātur	raperētur
		rapiebāmus	raperēmus	rapiebāmur	raperēmur
Future	{	rapiebātis	raperētis	rapiebāmini	raperēmini
		rapiebant	raperent	rapiebantur	raperentur
		rapiam		rapiar	
		apiēs		apiēris	
				apiēre	
		apiet		apiētur	
Perfect	{	apiēmus		apiēmur	
		apiētis		apiēmini	
		apient		apientur	
		rapui	rapuerim	raptus sum	raptus sim
		rapuisti	rapueris	raptus es	raptus sis
		rapuit	rapuerit	raptus est	raptus sit
Perfect	{	rapuimus	rapuerimus	rapti sumus	rapti simus
		rapuistis	rapueritis	rapti estis	rapti sitis
		rapuerunt	rapuerint	rapti sunt	rapti sint

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	rapueram	rapuissem	raptus eram	raptus essem
		rapuerās	rapuissēs	raptus erās	raptus essēs
		rapuerat	rapuisset	raptus erat	raptus esset
	{	rapuerāmus	rapuissēmus	rapti erāmus	rapti essēmus
		rapuerātis	rapuissētis	rapti erātis	rapti essētis
		rapuerant	rapuissent	rapti erant	rapti essent
Future Perfect	{	rapuerō		raptus erō	
		rapueris		raptus eris	
		rapuerit		raptus erit	
	{	rapuerimus		rapti erimus	
		rapueritis		rapti eritis	
		rapuerint		rapti erunt	

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	rape	rapite	rapere	rapimini
Future	{ <i>rapitō</i> <i>rapitō</i>	<i>rapitōte</i> <i>rapiuntō</i>	<i>rapitor</i> <i>rapitor</i>	<i>rapimintor</i>

PARTICIPLE		
Present	apiēns	
Perfect		raptus, -a, -um
Future	<i>raptūrus, -a, -um</i>	

INFINITIVE		
Present	rapere	rapī
Perfect	<i>rapuisse</i>	<i>raptus esse</i>
Future	<i>raptūrus esse</i>	<i>raptum iri</i>

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	<i>apiendī</i>	rapiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	<i>apiendō</i>	
Acc.	<i>apiendum</i>	
Abl.	<i>apiendō</i>	

SUPINE
raptum, rapta

THE FOURTH OR I-CONJUGATION

audiō, audire, audiui, auditus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
		audis	audiās	audiris	audiāris
	{	audit	audiat	audire	audiāre
				audītur	audiātur
	{	audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
		audītis	audiātis	audīmini	audiāmini
		audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
Imperfect	{	audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
		audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris	audīrēris
	{	audiēbat	audīrēt	audiēbāre	audīrēre
				audiēbātur	audīrētur
	{	audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
		audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
		audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
Future	{	audiam		audiar	
		audiēs		audiēris	
	{	audiet		audiēre	
				audiētur	
	{	audiēmus		audiēmur	
		audiētis		audiēmini	
		audient		audientur	
Perfect	{	audiui	audiverim	auditus sum	auditus sim
		audivistī	audiveris	auditus es	auditus sis
		audivit	audiverit	auditus est	auditus sit
	{	audivimus	audiverimus	audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
		audivistis	audiveritis	audītī estis	audītī sītis
		audivērunt	audiverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	audīveram	audivissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
		audīverās	audivissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
		audīverat	audivisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
		audīverāmus	audivissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
		audīverātis	audivissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
		audīverant	audivissent	audītī erant	audītī essent
Future Perfect	{	audīverō		audītus erō	
		audīveris		audītus eris	
		audīverit		audītus erit	
		audīverimus		audītī erimus	
		audīveritis		audītī eritis	
		audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
Future	{ <i>audītō</i>	<i>audītōte</i>	<i>audītōr</i>	
	{ <i>audītō</i>	<i>audiuntō</i>	<i>audītōr</i>	<i>audiuntōr</i>

PARTICIPLE

Present	audiēns	
Perfect		audītus, -a, -um
Future	<i>audītūrus, -a, -um</i>	

INFINITIVE

Present	audīre	audīri
Perfect	<i>audīvisse</i>	<i>audītus esse</i>
Future	<i>audītūrus esse</i>	<i>audītum iri</i>

GERUND

Gen.	<i>audiendī</i>
Dat.	<i>audiendō</i>
Acc.	<i>audiendum</i>
Abl.	<i>audiendō</i>

GERUNDIVE

<i>audiendus, -a, -um</i>

SUPINE

audītum, audītū

DEPONENTS

As all conjugations are given in full above, the corresponding deponents are here presented largely in synopsis.

I

	moror, morārī morātus sum	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	moror	morer
Imperf.	morābar	morārer
Future	morābor	
Perfect	morātus sum	morātus sim
Pluperf.	morātus eram	morātus essem
Fut. Perf.	morātus erō	

II

	polliceor, pollicērī pollicitus sum	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	polliceor	pollicear
Imperf.	pollicēbar	pollicērer
Future	pollicēbor	
Perfect	pollicitus sum	pollicitus sim
Pluperf.	pollicitus eram	pollicitus essem
Fut. Perf.	pollicitus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	morāre	morāminī	pollicēre	pollicēminī
Future	<i>morātor</i> <i>morātor</i>	<i>morantor</i>	<i>pollicētor</i> <i>pollicētor</i>	<i>pollicentor</i>

PARTICIPLE

Present	morāns	pollicēns
Perfect	morātus, -a, -um	pollicitus, -a, -um
Future	<i>morātūrus, -a, -um</i>	<i>pollicitūrus, -a, -um</i>

INFINITIVE

Present	morārī	pollicērī
Perfect	<i>morātus esse</i>	<i>pollicitus esse</i>
Future	<i>morātūrus esse</i>	<i>pollicitūrus esse</i>

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen.	<i>morandī</i>	morand(us, -a), -um	<i>pollicendī</i>	pollicendus, -a, -um
Dat.	<i>morandō</i>		<i>pollicendō</i>	
Acc.	<i>morandum</i>		<i>pollicendum</i>	
Abl.	<i>morandō</i>		<i>pollicendō</i>	

SUPINE

morātum, morātū

pollicitum, pollicitū

III

**proficiscor, proficisci
profectus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	proficiscor	proficiscar
Imperf.	profiscēbar	profiscerer
Future	profiscar	
Perfect	profectus sum	profectus sim
Pluperf.	profectus eram	profectus essem
Fut. Perf.	profectus erō	

IIIa

**patior, pati
passus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	patior	patiar
Imperf.	patiēbar	paterer
Future	patiar	
Perfect	passus sum	passus sim
Pluperf.	passus eram	passus essem
Fut. Perf.	passus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	proficiscere	profiscimini	patere	patimini
Future	<i>profiscitor</i> <i>profiscitor</i>	<i>profiscuntor</i>	<i>patitor</i> <i>patitor</i>	<i>patiuntor</i>

PARTICIPLE

Present	profiscēns	patiēns
Perfect	profectus, -a, -um	passus, -a, -um
Future	<i>profecturus, -a, -um</i>	<i>passurus, -a, -um</i>

INFINITIVE

Present	proficisci	pati
Perfect	<i>profectus esse</i>	<i>passus esse</i>
Future	<i>profecturus esse</i>	<i>passurus esse</i>

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen.	<i>profiscendi</i>	profiscend(us, -a),	<i>patendi</i>	patiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	<i>profiscendō</i>	-um	<i>patiendō</i>	
Acc.	<i>profiscendum</i>		<i>patiendum</i>	
Abl.	<i>profiscendō</i>		<i>patiendō</i>	

SUPINE

<i>profectum, profectū</i>	<i>passum, passū</i>
----------------------------	----------------------

IV

adorior, adoriri, adortus sum¹

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	adorior	adoriar
Imperfect	adoriēbar	adorīrer
Future	adoriar	
Perfect	adortus sum	adortus sim
Pluperfect	adortus eram	adortus essem
Future Perfect	adortus erō	

	IMPERATIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	adorīre	adorimini
Future	<i>adoritor</i> <i>adortitor</i>	<i>adoriuntor</i>

	PARTICIPLE
Present	adoriēns
Perfect	adortus, -a, -um
Future	<i>adortūrus, -a, -um</i>

	INFINITIVE
Present	adoriri
Perfect	<i>adortus esse</i>
Future	<i>adortūrus esse</i>

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	<i>adoriendī</i>	adoriendus, -a, -um
Dat.	<i>adoriendō</i>	
Acc.	<i>adoriendum</i>	
Abl.	<i>adoriendō</i>	

SUPINE
adortum, adortū

¹ On the analogy of *audiō* it might be expected that the perfect passive participle of deponents of the fourth conjugation would end in *-itus*; but the commonest deponents of the fourth conjugation form the perfect passive participle in other ways

IRREGULAR VERBS

		sum, esse, fui		possum, posse, potui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	sum	sim	possum	possim
		es	sis	potes	possis
		est	sit	potest	possit
	{	sumus	simus	possumus	possimus
		estis	sitis	potestis	possitis
		sunt	sint	possunt	possint
Im-perfect	{	eram	essem	poteram	possem
		erās	essēs	poterās	possēs
		erat	esset	poterat	posset
	{	erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
		erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
		erant	essent	poterant	possent
Future	{	erō		poterō	
		eris		poteris	
		erit		poterit	
	{	erimus		poterimus	
		eritis		poteritis	
		erunt		poterunt	
Perfect tenses regular.			Perfect tenses regular.		

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	es	esto
Future	estō	estōte
	estō	suntō

PARTICIPLE

Future *futūrus, -a, -um*

INFINITIVE

Present	esse	posse
Perfect	fuisse	potuisse
Future	futūrus esse, fore	

		eō, ire, ii, itum		volō, velle, volui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	eō	eam	volō	velim
		is	eās	vis	velis
		it	eat	vult	velit
	{	imus	eāmus	volumus	velimus
		itis	eātis	vultis	velitis
		eunt	eant	volunt	velint
Im- perfect	{	ibam	irem	volēbam	vellem
		ibās	irēs	volēbās	vellēs
		ibat	iret	volēbat	vellet
	{	ibāmus	irēmus	volēbāmus	vellēmus
		ibātis	irētis	volēbātis	vellētis
		ibant	irent	volēbant	vellent
Future	{	ibō		volam	
		ibis		volēs	
		ibit		volet	
	{	ibimus		volēmus	
		ibitis		volētis	
		ibunt		volent	
Perfect	{	ii	ierim, etc.	voluī, etc.	voluerim, etc.
		isti			
		iit			
	{	imus			
		istis			
		iērunt			
Pluperf.		ieram, etc.	issem, etc.	volueram, etc.	voluisssem, etc.
Fut. Perf.		ierō, etc.		voluerō, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	i	ite
Future	{ iō	iōte
	{ iō	euntō

PARTICIPLE

Present	iēns, gen. euntis	volēns
Perfect	it(us, -a), -um	
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	ire	velle
Perfect	isse	voluisse
Future	itūrus esse	

GERUND

GERUNDIVE

Gen.	eundī	eund(us, -a), -um
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	
Abl.	eundō	

mālō, mālīe, mālui

nōlō, nōlē, nōlui

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	mālō	mālim	nōlō	nōlim
	māvis	mālis	nōn vis	nōlis
	māvult	mālīt	nōn vult	nōlit
	mālumus	mālimus	nōlumus	nōlimus
	māvultis	mālītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	mālunt	mālīnt	nōlunt	nōlīnt
Imperfect	mālēbam	māllem	nōlēbam	nōllem
	mālēbās	mālles	nōlēbās	nōlles
	mālēbat	māllet	nōlēbat	nōllet
	mālēbāmus	māllemus	nōlēbāmus	nōllemus
	mālēbātis	mālletis	nōlēbātis	nōlletis
	mālēbant	mālilent	nōlēbant	nōlilent
Future	[mālam]		[nōlam]	
	mālēs		nōlēs	
	mālet		nōlet	
	mālēmus		nōlēmus	
	mālētis		nōlētis	
	mālent		nōlent	

Perfect tenses regular.

Perfect tenses regular.

		IMPERATIVE	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		nōlī	nōlīte
Future		nōlittō	nōlittōte
		nōlittō	nōluntō
		PARTICIPLE	
Present		nōlēns	
		INFINITIVE	
Present	mālle	nōlle	
Perfect	māluisse	nōluisse	

dō, dare, dedi, datus

This verb deviates from the first conjugation principally in that its *a* is often short in situations where the first conjugation would call for *ā*.

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		dō	dem	—	—
		dās	dēs	daris	dēris
				dare	dēre
		dat	det	datur	dētur
		damus	dēmus	damur	—
		datis	dētis	daminī	dēmini
Imperfect		dant	dent	dantur	dentur
		dabam	darem	dabar	darer
		dabās	darēs	dabāris	darēris
				dabāre	darēre
		dabat	daret	dabātur	darētur
		dabāmus	darēmus	dabāmur	darēmur
Future		dabātis	darētis	dabāmini	darēmini
		dabant	darent	dabantur	darentur
		dabō		dabor	
		dabīs		daberis	
				dabere	
		dabit		dabitur	
		dabimus		dabimur	
		dabitis		dabimini	
		dabunt		dabuntur	

Perfect tenses regular (excepting that the *a* of *datus* is short).

IMPERATIVE			
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Present	<i>dā</i>	<i>datis</i>	<i>dare</i>
Future	<i>datō</i>	<i>datōte</i>	<i>dator</i>
	<i>datō</i>	<i>dantō</i>	<i>dantor</i>

PARTICIPLE			
Present	<i>dāns</i>		
Perfect			<i>datus, -a, -um</i>
Future	<i>datūrus, -a, -um</i>		

INFINITIVE			
Present	<i>dare</i>		<i>dari</i>
Perfect	<i>dedisse</i>		<i>datus esse</i>
Future	<i>datūrus esse</i>		<i>datum iri</i>
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	<i>dandi</i>		<i>dandus, -a, -um</i>
Dat.	<i>dandō</i>		
Acc.	<i>dandum</i>		
Abl.	<i>dandō</i>		

SUPINE
datum, data

edō, ēsse (edere), ēdi, ēsus

The peculiarities of *edō* are due to the fact that its regular forms are often contracted, as in the infinitive above. Otherwise the verb conforms to the third conjugation, and only so much of it is here given as is needful to display the contracted forms.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	<i>edō</i>	<i>edam</i>	<i>edor</i>
	<i>ēs</i>	<i>edās</i>	<i>ederis</i>
	<i>edis</i>	<i>edāt</i>	<i>ederis</i>
	<i>ēst</i>	<i>edat</i>	<i>ēdare</i>
	<i>edit</i>	<i>editur</i>	<i>edātur</i>
	<i>edimus</i>	<i>edimur</i>	<i>edāmur</i>
	<i>ēstis</i>	<i>edimini</i>	<i>edāmini</i>
	<i>editis</i>		
	<i>edunt</i>	<i>eduntur</i>	<i>edantur</i>

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Im- perfect		edēbam	ēssem ederem	edēbar	ederer
		edēbās	ēsēs ederēs	edēbāris	ederēris
		edēbat	ēsset ederet	edēbātur	ēssetur ederetur
		edēbāmus	ēssemus ederemus	edēbāmur	ederemur
		edēbātis	ederētis	edēbāminī	ederēminī
		edēbant	ēscent ederent	edēbantur	ederentur

		IMPERATIVE			
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		ēs (ede)	ēste (edite)	edere	edimini
Future		ēstō (editō)	ēstōte (editōte)	editōr	
		ēstō (editō)	eduntō	editōr	eduntor

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		ferō	feram	feror	ferar
		fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
		fert	ferat	ferre	ferāre
		fertur	ferātur		
		ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
		fertis	ferātis	ferimini	ferāmini
Im- perfect		ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
		ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
		ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēbāris	ferrēris
		ferēbat	ferret	ferēbāre	ferrēre
		ferēbātur	ferretur	ferēbātur	ferrētur
		ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
		ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāminī	ferrēminī
		ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbantur	ferrentur

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE		INDICATIVE	
Future	feram	ferar	
	ferēs	ferēris	
	feret	ferēre	
		ferētur	
	ferēmus	ferēmur	
	ferētis	ferēmini	
	ferent	ferentur	

Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
Future	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	feritō	feruntō	feritor	feruntor

PARTICIPLE	
Present	ferēs
Perfect	
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE	
Present	ferre
Perfect	tulisse
Future	lātūrus esse

GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	ferendī	ferendus, -a, -um	
Dat.	ferendō		
Acc.	ferendum		
Abl.	ferendō		

SUPINE
lātum, lātā

fiō, fieri, factus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	fiō	fiam
	fis	fiās
	fit	fiat
	[fimus]	fiāmus
	[fitis]	fiātis
	fiunt	fiant
Im- perfect	fiēbam	fierem
	fiēbās	fierēs
	fiēbat	fieret
	fiēbāmus	fierēmus
	fiēbātis	fierētis
	fiēbant	fierent
Future	fiam	
	fiēs	
	fiet	
	fiēmus	
	fiētis	
	fient	

Perfect tenses identical with those of the passive of **faciō**.

	IMPERATIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fi	fiō
	PARTICIPLE	
Perfect	factus, -a, -um	
	INFINITIVE	
Present	fieri	
Perfect	factus esse	
Future	[factum iri] futurus esse, fore	

WORD LIST

The numbers indicate the Exercises in which a word is defined or used in some special way.

ā, ab, preposition, used with the ablative case, 56, Rule.

abscīdō, abscīdere, abscīdī, abscīsus, 53.

accipīō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, 54.

ācer, ācris, ācre, 52, 65.

ācritēr, adverb, 52, 66.

ad, preposition, used with the accusative case, 12.

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiūtus, 38.

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, 69.

ager, agrī, M., 10.

agricola, -ae, M., 6.

albus, -a, -um, 14.

aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid), 71.

altus, -a, -um, 39, 65.

āmittō, āmittere, āmisī, āmissus, 67.

ancilla, -ae, F., 19.

annus, -ī, M., 48.

apud, preposition, used with the accusative case, 66.

aqua, -ae, F., 4.

arbor, -oris, F., 37.

ārea, -ae, F., 3.

āter, ātra, ātrum, 57, 65.

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, 50, 51, 66, 67, 72.

aut, conjunction, 71.

autem, postpositive conjunction, 39.

avia, -ae, F., 22.

avis, -is, F., 48.

avus, -ī, M., 22.

bāca, -ae, F., 4.

bellum, -ī, N., 54.

bonus, -a, -um, 14, 65.

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, 17, 43.

caelum, -ī, N., 24.

canis, -is, M. and F., 46.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 49.

capsa, -ae, F., 13.

caput, capitis, N., 49.

castellum, -ī, N., 66.

castra, -ōrum, N., 56.

cauda, -ae, F., 9.

cavea, -ae, F., 8.

celeriter, adverb, 25, 66.

cēna, -ae, F., 28.

cēterī, -ae, -a, 38.

Claudia, -ae, F., 6.

coepl, 31.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, 61.

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactus, 70.

collis, -is, M., 42.

collocō, collocāre, collocāvī, collocātus, 38.

colōnus, -ī, M., 67.

columba, -ae, F., 18.

commōtus, -a, -um, 60.

complēō, complēre, complēvī, complētus, 19.

concha, -ae, F., 7.

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, 70.
 cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsi,
 cōnsūptus, 45.
 conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, con-
 ventus, 50.
 coquus, -ī, M., 28.
 corbula, -ae, F., 1.
 corvus, -ī, M., 30.
 crās, adverb, 15.
 culīna, -ae, F., 28.
 cum, conjunction, 22.
 cum, preposition, used with the abla-
 tive case, 5, 20, Rem., 49, Rem.,
 59, Note.
 cūnae, -ārum, F., 8.
 cūr, adverb, 7.
 currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 10,
 30, 43.
 custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivī, cus-
 tōditus, 62.
 cymba, -ae, F., 6.
 dē, preposition, used with the abla-
 tive case, 72.
 decem, 47.
 decimus, -a, -um, 68.
 dēfessus, -a, -um, 14.
 deus, -ī, M., 68.
 dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, 61; cf. 51,
 Rem.
 diēs, diēī, M. and F., 59.
 diū, adverb, 25, 66.
 dō, dare, dedī, datus, 18, 36, 68;
 cf. 12.
 doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, 5.
 domus, -ūs, F., 68; (domum, 30;
 domī, 70).
 ducō, ducere, duxī, ductus, 12, 43,
 64; cf. 51, Rem.
 duo, duae, duo, 38.
 duodecim, 59.
 duodecimus, -a, -um, 72.

duodēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um, 72.
 duodēvīgintī, 59.
 ē, ex, preposition, used with the abla-
 tive case, 10.
 ēbrius, -a, -um, 29.
 edō, ēsse (ēdere), ēdī, ēsus, 28, 43.
 ego, mei, 20, 21, Rule.
 emō, emere, ēmī, emptus, 27, 43.
 enim, postpositive conjunction, 40.
 eō, ire, īī, itum, 11, 22, Rem., 39,
 51, 67.
 eques, -itis, M., 64.
 equus, -ī, M., 9, 64.
 ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptum,
 25, 43.
 ēscendō, ēscendere, ēscendī, ēscen-
 sum, 37, 43.
 et, conjunction, 2.
 exercitus, -ūs, M., 53.
 facile, adverb, 66.
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 49, 51,
 Rem. See also fiō.
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, 44, 51, 62, 67.
 filia, -ae, F., 15.
 filius, filiī, M., 15.
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, 64.
 flōs, flōris, M., 37.
 fluctus, -ūs, M., 53.
 flūmen, -inis, N., 55.
 folium, -ī, N., 34.
 fortasse, adverb, 62.
 fortis, -is, -e, 52, 65.
 fortiter, adverb, 52, 66.
 frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, 15,
 43.
 frāter, -tris, M., 41.
 frūmentum, -ī, N., 60.
 fuga, -ae, F., 68.
 fugiō, fugere, fūgī, 38, 48.
 fūrtim, adverb, 33.

gallina, -ae, F., 33.
gēna, gentis, F., 63.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 54.
gladius, -ī, M., 65.
gremium, -ī, N., 20.

habeo, habēre, habuī, habitus, 2, 6,
 15, 18, 19, 22, 25, 29 and 2nd
 Rem., 31, 33, 34, 51, 58, 64, 67, 72.
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitā-
 tum, 37.
harēna, -ae, F., 7.
haud procul, adverbial phrase, 66.
herba, -ae, F., 2.
herī, adverb, 17.
hic, haec, hoc, 70.
hodiē, adverb, 16.
hōra, -ae, F., 45.
hortus, -ī, M., 9.
hostis, -is, M. and F., 54.
humī, 48.

ibi, adverb, 16.
idem, eadem, idem, 55.
idōneus, -a, -um, 35.
igitur, postpositive conjunction, 57.
ignis, -is, M., 42.
ille, illa, illud, 70.
imperātor, -ōris, M., 53.
impetus, -ūs, M., 53.
in, preposition, used with the ablative
 case, 2; used with the accusative
 case, 10, 17; cf. 64, 68.
Indī, -ōrum, M., 59.
inquit, inquit, 4, 7.
insula, -ae, F., 45.
interim, adverb, 26.
invenio, invenire, invēnī, inventus,
 23, 50.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 55.
irātus, -a, -um, 34.
is, ea, id, 28, 59.

iste, ista, istud, 71.
ita, adverb, 48.
itaque, conjunction, 8.
iter, itineris, N., 49.

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, 5.
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, 15, 48.
iam, adverb, 35.
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, 58.
Iūlia, -ae, F., 4.

laetus, -a, -um, 32.
latebrae, -ārum, F., 25.
lateō, latēre, latuī, 3.
lectus, -ī, M., 20.
legiō, -ōnis, F., 68.
libenter, adverb, 66.
liber, -brī, M., 12.
liberī, -ōrum, M., 22.
lītus, -oris, N., 37.
locus, -ī, M. (plu. loca, -ōrum, N.), 35.
longē, adverb, 58, 66.
longus, -a, -um, 14.
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus, 53; cf. 4.
lūdus, -ī, M., 12.
lūna, -ae, F., 24.
lupus, -ī, M., 16.
lutum, -ī, N., 18.
lūx, lūcis, F., 58.

maestus, -a, -um, 64.
magister, -trī, M., 12.
magnus, -a, -um, 14, 65.
maior, maior, maius; see magnus.
mālō, mälle, mālui, 31, 47.
mālum, -ī, N., 11.
maius, -a, -um, 15, 65.
māne, adverb, 57.
manus, -ūs, F., 64.
Mārcella, -ae, F., 8.
Mārcus, -ī, M., 4, 9, 13.
mare, -is, N., 42.

māter, -tris, F., 41.
 mātīmōnium, -ī, N., 64.
 maximus, -a, -um; see magnus.
 melior, -ior, -ius; see bonus.
 mēnsa, -ae, F., 1.
 meus, -a, -um, 21.
 miles, -itis, M., 55.
 milia (-ium, N.) passuum, 46.
 minimus, -a, -um; see parvus.
 minor, minor, minus; see parvus.
 miser, -era, -erum, 17, 65.
 mittō, mittere, misi, missus, 11, 43,
 51, 60, 67, 72.
 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus,
 20.
 moror, morārī, morātus sum, 69.
 mortuus, -a, -um, 51.
 mox, adverb, 22.
 mulier, -ieris, F., 67.
 multi, -ae, -a, 20, 65.

 nam, conjunction, 15.
 nauta, -ae, M., 1.
 nāvis, -is, F., 45.
 nē, conjunction, 68, Rule.
 -ne, interrogative particle, 35, Rule.
 neque (nec), conjunction, 48.
 nīdus, -ī, M., 33.
 noctū, adverb, 63.
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 31, 47, 51, 67.
 nōn, adverb, 16.
 nōnus, -a, -um, 68.
 noster, -tra, -trum, 21.
 nostrī, -ōrum, M., 68.
 novem, 47.
 nox, noctis, F., 56.
 nūbēs, -is, F., 57.
 nūllus, -a, -um, 62.
 numquam, adverb, 71.
 nunc, adverb, 6, 35, Rem.

 obēsus, -a, -um, 28.

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus, 16,
 43.
 octāvus, -a, -um, 68.
 octō, 47.
 ōlim, adverb, 19.
 omnis, -is, -e, 60.
 oppidum, -ī, N., 17.
 optimus, -a, -um; see bonus.
 ovis, -is, F., 62.
 ōvum, -ī, N., 33.

 paene, adverb, 64.
 parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, 53.
 parvus, -a, -um, 14, 65.
 passus, -ūs, M.; see milia passuum.
 pater, -tris, M., 41.
 patera, -ae, F., 28.
 patior, pati, passus sum, 69.
 paucī, -ae, -a, 46.
 paulō post, adverbial phrase, 62.
 pāx, pācis, F., 54.
 pecūnia, -ae, F., 20.
 peior, peior, peius; see malus.
 per, preposition, used with the accu-
 sative case, 23.
 perterritus, -a, -um, 37.
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, per-
 ventum, 65.
 pessimus, -a, -um; see malus.
 petō, petere, petivī, petitus, 72.
 piger, -gra, -grum, 17, 65.
 pila, -ae, F., 1; cf. 4.
 piscis, -is, M., 42.
 plūrēs, plūrēs, plūra; see multi,
 and 65, Note.
 plūrimī, -ae, -a; see multi.
 pōculum, -ī, N., 29.
 poenān dō, dare, dedī, datus, 12.
 polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum,
 69.
 porta, -ae, F., 17.
 possum, posse, potuī, 31, 40.

post; see **paulō post**.

postea, adverb, 70.

postrēmō, adverb, 67.

primō, adverb, 64.

primus, -a, -um, 68.

procul; see **haud procul**.

proficiſcor, **proficiſcī**, **profectus sum**, 69.

prope, preposition, used with the accusative case, 50.

properō, **properāre**, **properāvī**, **properātum**, 36.

puella, -ae, F., 2.

puer, -erī, M., 10.

pugna, -ae, F., 72.

pugnō, **pugnāre**, **pugnāvī**, **pugnātum**, 52.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, 27, 65.

pūpa, -ae, F., 2.

putō, **putāre**, **putāvī**, **putātus**, 61.

quārtus, -a, -um, 68.

quārtus (-a, -um) **decimus**, -a, -um, 72.

quattuor, 47.

quattuordecim, 59.

-que, conjunction, 24.

quī, interrogative pronoun: see **quis**.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, relative pronoun, 49, 62.

quia, conjunction, 7.

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (**quidam**), 57.

quīndecim, 59.

quīnque, 47.

Quintus, -ī, M., 9, 13.

quīntus, -a, -um, 68.

quīntus (-a, -um) **decimus**, -a, -um, 72.

(**quis**) **quī**, **quae**, (**quid**) **quod**, interrogative pronoun, 60; also 6 (**quid**).

quoque, adverb, 46.

rāmus, -ī, M., 34.

rapīō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus**, 32, 48, 51, 63, 67, 72.

redeō, **redire**, **redīī**, **reditum**, 62.

relinquō, **relinquere**, **reliquī**, **relictus**, 72.

remittō, **remittere**, **remisi**, **remissus**, 54.

rēs, **rei**, F., 59.

rēx, **rēgis**, M., 63.

rīpa, -ae, F., 30.

rīvus, -ī, M., 30.

rosa, -ae, F., 1.

saepe, adverb, 44.

sagitta, -ae, F., 26.

saxum, -ī, N., 17.

scālae, -ārum, F., 3.

secundus, -a, -um, 68.

secūris, -is, F., 51.

sed, conjunction, 8.

sēdecim, 59.

sedeō, **sedere**, **sēdī**, **sessum**, 5.

sella, -ae, F., 4.

septem, 47.

septendecim, 59.

septimus, -a, -um, 68.

septimus (-a, -um) **decimus**, -a, -um, 72.

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, 71.

sex, 47.

sextus, -a, -um, 68.

sextus (-a, -um) **decimus**, -a, -um, 72.

silva, -ae, F., 16.

simia, -ae, F., 3.

simul, adverb, 72.

sine, preposition, used with the ablative case, 64.

solea, -ae, F., 4.

soror, -ōris, F., 41.
 spēlunca, -ae, F., 19.
 statim, adverb, 55.
 stella, -ae, F., 24.
 stilus, -ī, M., 13.
 sub, preposition, used with the ablative case, 3.
 subitō, adverb, 37.
 subsellium, -ī, N., 12.
 suī, sibi, 61.
 sum, esse, fui, 2, 3, 16, 24, 30, 32, 40, 51.
 sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, 63.

taberna, -ae, F., 11.
 tabernāculum, -ī, N., 11.
 tabula, -ae, F., 13.
 tempestās, -ātis, F., 61.
 teneō, tenēre, tenuī, 2.
 tergum, -ī, N., 13.
 terra, -ae, F., 18.
 terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, 8.
 tertius, -a, -um, 68.
 tertius (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, 72.

timeō, timēre, timui, 3.
 trānseō, trānsire, trānsii, trānsitus, 44.

tredecim, 59.
 trēs, trīs, tria, 38.
 tū, tui, 20, 21, Rule.
 tum, adverb, 12.
 tūtus, -a, -um, 32.
 tuus, -a, -um, 21.

ubi, adverb, 4.

ūllus, -a, -um, 62.
 umbra, -ae, F., 5.
 umerus, -ī, M., 13.
 ūnā, adverb, 59, Note.
 ūndecim, 59.
 ūndecimus, -a, -um, 72.
 ūndēvicēsimus, -a, -um, 72.
 ūndēviginti, 59.
 undique, adverb, 63.
 ūnus, -a, -um, 59.
 urbs, urbis, F., 67.
 ursa, -ae, F., 19.
 ut, conjunction, 19.
 ūva, -ae, F., 23.
 uxor, -ōris, F., 60.

validus, -a, -um, 16.
 vallēs, -is, F., 42.
 vehementer, adverb, 42.
 vehō, vehere, vēxi, vectus, 13, 43, 64.
 vēnātor, -ōris, M., 46.
 veniō, venīre, vēni, ventum, 10, 50.
 vester, -tra, -trum, 21.
 via, -ae, F., 2.
 vicēsimus, -a, -um, 72.
 videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, 4.
 viginti, 59.
 villa, -ae, F., 41.
 vinum, -ī, N., 29.
 vir, viri, M., 67.
 vis, —, F., 61.
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, 36, 51, 54, 56, 64, 67, 72.
 volō, velle, volui, 31, 46, 67.
 vōx, vōcis, F., 62.
 vulpēcula, -ae, F., 23.

APPENDIX I

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

Alphabet. The Latin alphabet is like the English, excepting that it lacks the letters *j* and *w*; moreover, *k*, *y*, and *z* are little used in Latin.

Sounds. Latin speech sounds are of two general classes; namely, Consonant and Vowel.

NOTE. The letter *i* has two uses: sometimes it is to be read as a consonant, sometimes as a vowel. It is to be read as a consonant (*a*) when it stands between vowels within a word, as in *eius*; and (*b*) when it begins a word and is followed by a vowel, as in *iam*.

Consonants. The consonant sounds of Latin are expressed by *b, c, d, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x,* and *z*. Nearly all of these letters are sounded as in English, but the pronunciation of the following requires special notice:

<i>b</i> , when followed by <i>s</i> , or <i>t</i> , is sounded as <i>p</i> ; as in <i>urbs</i> and <i>obtineō</i> .	<i>s</i> as in <i>sat</i> (never as in <i>busy</i> or <i>sure</i>). <i>t</i> as in <i>tin</i> (never as in <i>ra-</i> <i>tional</i>). <i>v</i> as <i>w</i> in <i>wind</i> .
<i>c</i> as in <i>cut</i> (never as in <i>cent</i>).	
<i>g</i> as in <i>get</i> (never as in <i>gem</i>).	
<i>i</i> as <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i> .	

REMARK. The letter *q* is found only in the combination *qu*. Here (and sometimes in the combinations *gu* and *su*) the letter *u* represents *v*, and must be so pronounced.

Vowels. The vowel sounds of Latin are represented by **a, e, i, o, u, and y.**

NOTE 1. Vowels may be either long or short. A long vowel is indicated by writing a straight line above the letter, as *ā*. A short vowel is usually unmarked; but the sign *˘* is sometimes used, as *ă*.

NOTE 2. By running two different vowels together into a single sound, a diphthong is produced. The principal diphthongs of Latin are **ae, au, and eu.**

The Latin vowel and diphthong sounds are as follows:

ā as *a* in *farther*.

ō as *o* in *forty*.

ā as *a* in *ahém*.

ū as *u* in *rude*.

ē as *e* in *they*.

ū as *u* in *put*.

ē as *e* in *let*.

y as German *ü*.

ī as *i* in *machine*.

ae as *y* in *try*.

ī as *i* in *bit*.

au as *ou* in *out*.

ō as *o* in *tone*.

eu as *eu* in *feud*.¹

Syllables. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

In dividing a word into syllables, (*a*) a single consonant goes with the following vowel, as *e-go*; (*b*) a group of consonants is usually shared between two syllables, as *duc-tus* and *sel-la*. But to this last there are many exceptions, whole consonant groups sometimes being pronounced with the following vowel.²

Length of Syllables. Syllables may be either long or short.

¹ The diphthong *eu* is not often found. Two other infrequent combinations are *oe* and *ui*, as seen in *coepti* and *huic*. These latter diphthongs have the sound of Latin *ō* + *z* and Latin *u* + *z*, pronounced rapidly and with stress on the second vowel.

² As a rule for printed texts, it is customary in dividing words to put with the following vowel all the consonants that can be pronounced with that vowel, as *ca-stra* and *pu-gna*.

Long are (*a*) those which contain a long vowel or a diphthong; as *tē*, and the first syllable of *sae-pe* or *au-tem*: (*b*) those in which a short vowel is followed in the same word by two or more consonants, or by either *x* or *z*; ¹ as the first syllable of *tēn-dō*,² and *nōx*. But, by exception, a syllable in which a short vowel is followed in the same word by a mute (*c*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *f*, *p*, or *b*) and a liquid (*l* or *r*) is usually short.³

Short are the syllables which contain a short vowel not followed in the same word by two or more consonants; as the two syllables of *ro-sa*.

REMARK. Distinguish carefully between long *vowel* and long *syllable*, noting (as shown above) that the vowel of a long syllable may be itself short.

Accent. Latin words of two syllables are accented upon the first syllable; as, *mēnsa*. Words of greater length are accented upon the last syllable but one, if that be long, otherwise upon the preceding syllable; as, *colōnus*, *magīster*, and *pātera*.

REMARK. The addition of *-cum*, *-ne*, or *-que* causes the accent of the words to which they are joined to shift to the last syllable; as, *nōbīscum*, *vidēsne*, and *puellāque*.

¹ Both *x* and *z* stand for double consonant sounds, *x* being equivalent to *c + s*, and *z* probably representing the sound of *d + s*.

² Note that the first syllable of *ten-dō* contains only one of the consonants whose presence makes it long. According to current metrical theory, any syllable that ends in a consonant is thereby closed and made long. On this basis, *tēn-* is in and for itself a long syllable. The influence of the following *d* lies simply in the fact that its presence makes it necessary to pronounce the *n* with the preceding vowel (for *te-ndō* would be unpronounceable), thus closing the preceding syllable and making it long. Contrast the situation in *tē-neō*, where the first syllable is open and short, there being no following consonant to force the *n* back into that first syllable.

³ Because the mute and liquid (e.g., *tr*, *pl*, etc.) can both so readily be pronounced with the following vowel, thus leaving the preceding syllable open and short.

APPENDIX II

COLLOQUIAL PHRASES

(Teachers who make use of this material will in some cases find it necessary to explain to their classes the form and syntax of the phrase employed.)

ASSENT

licet, *all right.* scilicet, *of course.*
maximē vērō, *yes indeed.*

EXCLAMATION

āin tū? *what's that!* ēheu, *alas!*
ecce Mārcum, *see, there's* eugē, *good! bravo!*
 Marcus. nūgās, *nonsense!*

GREETING, ETC.

salvē (salvēte),¹ *good morning, good day, etc.*
salvum tē advēnisse gaudeō, *I'm glad you've arrived safe.*
quid agis? (agitis?) *how do you do?*
quid agitur? *how goes it?*
valē (valēte), *good-by.*
cūrā ut valeās, *take care of yourself.*
cūrāte ut valeātis, *take care of yourselves.*

REQUEST, ETC.

obsecrō:
 properā (properāte), obsecrō, *do hurry.*

¹ Words in black-faced type thus bracketed are the corresponding plurals, to be used when more than one person is addressed.

quā :

quā curris ? (curritis ?) *run, will you.*

abīn hīc ? (singular), *begone from here.* For plural, use **discēdite** simply.

MISCELLANEOUS

adde (addite) gradum, *hurry up.*

bene est, *good !, I'm glad, etc.*

certum est mihi ire, *I've made up my mind to go.*

ilicō, *immediately, instantly.*

male nārrās (nārrātis), *that's bad, I'm sorry to hear it, etc.*

nīl agis (agitis), *it's no use.*

nōn āssis faciō (with accusative), *I don't care a straw for.*

quid eō factum est ? *what has become of him ?*

sēdulō, *with right good will.*

ut ita dicam, *so to speak.*

INDEX

(All references are to pages)

ā, ab: with Ablative of Agent, 141, Rule.

use of the two forms, 141, Rem. 2.

Ablative Case:

Ablative Absolute, 167, Rule and Rem.

of Accompaniment, 72, Rem.

of Agency, 141, Rule and Rem. 1.

of Means, 72, Rule and Rem.

See also *in*.

Accent: 231.

affected by the addition of *-cum*, *-ne*, or *-que*, 231, Rem.

Accompaniment: expressed by the ablative with *cum*, 72, Rem.

Accusative Case:

as subject of infinitive, 147, Rem. 1, (in indirect discourse) 156, Rule.

Direct Object, 20; *cf.* 53, Rem.

domum: with verbs of going and sending, 80, Rem.

of Extent of Time or Space, 112, Rule, 116, N.

of neuter nouns and adjectives; form of, 36, Rem.

See also *in*.

ācer: declined, 196.

ācriter: compared, 197.

ad: with the accusative case, 39, Rem. 1.

Adjectives:

agreement of, 44, Rule and Rem.

comparison of, 197; *cf.* 169.

Adjectives, declension of:

First and Second Declensions, 195.

Third Declension: Consonant Stems (comparatives and present participles), 196; I-Stems, 195.

Predicate Adjectives, 45, Rule, 165, N. 2.

adorior: conjugated, 214.

Adverbs:

comparison of, 197.

form of the comparative, 173, Rem. 2.

Agency: expressed by the ablative with *ā, ab*, 141, Rule and Rem. 1.

ager: declined, 192.

Agreement:

of adjectives, 44, Rule and Rem.

of subject and verb, 20, Rule II.

of the relative pronoun, 122, Rule and Rem.

aliqui, aliquis: declined, 201.

meaning of, 186, Rem.

use of, 186, N.

alius: declension of, 197, N.

Alphabet of Latin: 229.

alter: declension of, 197, N.

altior: declined, 196.

altus: compared, 197.

animal: declined, 193.

arbor: declined, 193.

audiō: conjugated, 210.

aut: use of, 187, Rem.

autem: postpositive word, 99, N.

- bonus** : compared, 197; declined, 195.
- canis** : declension of, 115, Rem. 1.
Case : defined, 15.
celeriter : compared, 197.
Circumstance : expressed by *cum* and the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, 63, Rule.
coepi : with infinitive, 81, 82, N.
cogō : with infinitive, 184.
collocō : with *in* and the ablative case, 97, Rem.
Colloquial Phrases, 232.
Comparison :
 of adjectives, 197; *cf.* 169.
 of adverbs, 197; *cf.* 173 and Remarks.
Conjugation : defined, 16.
 irregular verbs, 215.
 regular verbs, 202.
cōnor : with infinitive, 184.
Consonant Stems : see Adjectives, and Third Declension.
Consonants : 229.
cornū : declined, 194.
cum (conjunction) : in clauses telling circumstance, 63, Rule.
 position in sentence, 63, Rem.
 tenses of the subjunctive used with, 63, N.
cum (preposition) :
 effect upon accent of word to which joined, 58, Rem.; *cf.* 122, Rem.
 with *ūnā*, 150, N.
Customary Past Action : 131.
- Dative Case** :
 Indirect Object, 53, Rule.
- Declension** : defined, 15.
 of adjectives, 195.
 of nouns, 192.
 of numerals, 197, 198.
- Declension** : of pronouns, 199.
 of proper names, 24, N.
- Definite and Indefinite Articles** : lacking in Latin, 19, Rem. 2.
- Demonstrative Pronouns** : 200. See *hic, ille, iste*.
- Deponent Verbs** : 181, 212.
 principal parts of, 182, Rem.
- deus** : declined, 194.
- dīcō** : form *dīc*, 126, Rem.
- diēs** : declined, 194.
- Diphthongs** : 230 and N. 2.
- Direct Object** : 20, Rule I; *cf.* 53, Rem.
- diū** : compared, 197.
- dō** : conjugated, 218.
- domum** : use of the case, 80, Rem.
- domus** : declined, 194. *Cf.* *domum*.
- dūcō** : form *dūc*, 126, Rem.
- duo** : declined, 198.
- ē, ex** : use of the two forms, 35, Rem. 2.
- edō** : conjugated, 219.
- ego** : declined, 199.
 accent of ablative plural, 58, Rem.
 use of the nominative case, 60, Rule.
- enim** : postpositive word, 102, N.
- eō** : conjugated, 216.
 forms of the perfect indicative, 38, Rem.
- est** : "there is," 20, Rem.; *cf.* 48, Rem.
- exercitus** : declined, 194.
- Extent of Time or Space** : 112, Rule, 116, N.
- facile** : compared, 197.
- faciō** :
 form *fac*, 126, Rem.
 special passive of, 165, N. 1.
- ferō** : conjugated, 220.

- Fifth or E-Declension:** 194.
 gender of nouns of, 149.
- filius:** declension of, 46, Rem.
- fiō:** conjugated, 222.
 meaning of, 165, N. 1.
 with Predicate Noun or Adjective,
 165, N. 2.
- First or A-Conjugation:** 202.
- First or A-Declension:** 192.
 gender of nouns of, 17.
- fiōs:** declined, 193.
- fortis:** compared, 197; declined,
 195.
- fortiter:** compared, 197.
- Fourth or I-Conjugation:** 210; cf.
 124, Rem., 214, footnote.
- Fourth or U-Declension:** 194.
 gender of nouns of, 131.
- Future Perfect Tense:** meaning of,
 85, Rem. 3.
- Gender:** defined, 15.
 first declension, 17; second declension,
 36; third declension, 95; fourth declension,
 131; fifth declension, 149.
- Genitive Case:**
 expressing ownership, 32, Rule.
 of *filius* and proper nouns in *-ius*
 and neuters in *-ium*, 193, Rem.
- Gerundive:** 188.
- habēō:** conjugated, 204.
 imperfect tense, translation of, 78,
 Rem.
- hic:** declined, 200.
 use of, 184, Rem.
- Hortatory Subjunctive:** 99, Rule.
- hortus:** declined, 192.
- ibi:** use of, 48, Rem.
- idem:** declined, 200.
- idem:** derivation of, 138, Rem. 1.
 translation of neuter of, 138, N.
- Identity:** pronoun of; see *idem*.
- igitur:** postpositive word, 145.
- ignis:** declined, 193.
- ille:** declined, 200.
 use of, 184, Rem.
- Imperative Mood:** 126, 127.
 formation of present passive, 141,
 Rem. 2.
 forms of the present active lacking
 final *-e*, 126, Rem.
- Imperfect Tense:**
 expressing Customary Past Action,
 131.
 general meaning of, 77, N. and
 Rem.
 of *habēō*; translation of, 78, Rem.
 of *sum*; translation of, 79, Rem.
 See Subjunctive Mood.
- in:** with the ablative case, 35, Rem. 3,
 97, Rem.
 with the accusative case, 35, Rem. 3,
 39, Rem. 1, 50, Rem.
- Indeclinable cardinal numerals:** 118,
 N., 149, 150.
- Indefinite and Definite Articles:** lack-
 ing in Latin, 19, Rem. 2.
- Indefinite Pronouns:** 201. See *quī-
 dam*, and *aliquī*.
- Indirect Discourse:** 155.
 use of the reflexive *in*; 157, N. 3.
- Indirect Object:** 53, Rule.
- Infinitive:**
 third conjugation active; form of,
 108, Rem.
 use in indirect discourse, 156,
 Rule.
 with *coepī*, 82, N.; with *cōgō*, 184;
 with *cōnor*, 184; with *iubeō*, 147;
 with *mālō*, 82, N.; with *nōlō*,
 82, N., 127, Rule; with *parō*,

Infinitive:

131; with *patior*, 181; with *possum*, 82, N.; with *volō*, 82, N.

with subject accusative, 147, Rem. 1, (in indirect discourse) 156, Rule.

Inflection: defined, 15.

Intensive Pronoun: see *ipse*.

Interrogative Pronoun: see *quis*.

ipse: declined, 200.

use of, 138, Rem. 2.

Irregular adjectives and adverbs: compared, 197.

Irregular nouns: 194.

Irregular verbs: 215.

irregular present imperative active, 126, Rem.

is: declined, 199.

used as an adjective, 150, 199, N. 2.

use of nominative case, 74, N.

iste: declension of, 187, N.

I-Stems: see *Adjectives, and Third Declension*.

iam: use of, 90, Rem.

iubeō: with infinitive, 147.

libenter: compared, 197.

litus: declined, 193.

longē: compared, 197.

lūx: declension of, 148, Rem. 2.

magnus: compared, 197.

mālō: conjugated, 217.

derivation of, 117.

with infinitive, 81, 82, N.

mālum: declined, 192.

malus: compared, 197.

mare: declined, 193.

Means: expressed by the ablative case, 72.

mēnsa: declined, 192.

meus: vocative case of, 61, Rem.; cf. 46, Rem.

miser: compared, 197; declined, 195.

mittō: conjugated, 206.

Mood: defined, 16.

moror: conjugated, 212.

multī: compared, 197.

nō: introducing purpose clauses, 179, Rule.

-ne: 90, Rule and Rem. 2.

effect upon accent of word to which joined, 90, Rem. 1.

Neuter:

I-Stems, 105 N. and Remarks.

nouns and adjectives; form of accusative case, 36, Rem.

of second declension; genitive singular, 193, Rem.

pronouns: translation of nominative and accusative of, 138, N.

neuter: declension of, 197, N.

nōlī, nōlīte: use in Prohibitions, 127, Rule.

nōlō: conjugated, 217.

derivation of, 117.

with infinitive, 81, 82, N.

See *nōlī*.

Nominative Case:

as subject of verb, 20.

of I-Stems, 105, N.

of personal pronouns; use of, 60, Rule, 74, N.

Predicate Nominative, 45, Rule, 165, N. 2.

Nouns: 192.

irregular, 194.

Predicate Nouns, 45, Rule, 165, N. 2.

nūllus: declension of, 197, N.

Number: defined, 16.

indicated by verb endings, 19, Rem.

of verb of purpose clauses, 56, Rem. 1.

- Numerals:** 197, 198.
 cardinal; indeclinable, 118, N., 149, 150.
nunc: use of, 90, Rem.
- Object:** Direct, 20, 53, Rem.; Indirect, 53, Rule.
- Order of words:** in sentence containing a *cum*-clause, 63, Rem.
- parō:** with infinitive, 131.
- Participles:**
 perfect passive; use of, 165.
 present active; declension of, 196.
parvus: compared, 197.
- Passive:**
 perfect participle of, 165; cf. 214, footnote.
 perfect tenses of, 134.
 personal endings of, 141, Rem. 1.
- patior:** conjugated, 213.
 with infinitive, 181.
- Perfect Tense:**
 meaning of, 27, N. and Rem.
 passive of, 134; cf. 165.
 passive participle of, 165.
- Person:** defined, 16.
 indicated by verb endings, 19, Rem.
 of verb in purpose clauses, 56, Rem. 1.
- Personal endings:**
 form of passive, 141, Rem. 1.
 use of, 19, Rem.
- Personal Pronouns:** see *ego*, *is*, and *tū*.
- piger:** compared, 197; declined, 195.
- Place:** into Which, 35, Rem. 3, 39, Rem. 1; to Which, 39, Rem. 1; Where, 35, Rem. 3.
- Pluperfect Tense:** meaning of, 68, N.
- plūrēs:** see *plūs*.
- plūs:** declined, 196; cf. 170, N.
- polliceor:** conjugated, 212.
- Possessive Adjectives:** 61.
 use of, 61, N., 175, footnote.
- Possessive Genitive:** 32, Rule.
- possum:** conjugated, 215.
 derivation of, 101, Rem.
 with infinitive, 81, 82, N.
- Postpositive words:** *autem*, 99, N.; *enim*, 102, N.; *igitur*, 145.
- Predicate Adjectives and Nouns:** 45, Rule, 165, N. 2.
- Principal Parts of verbs:** 89, 90.
 of deponents, 182, Rem.
- profiscor:** conjugated, 213.
- Prohibition:** 127, Rule.
- Pronoun of Identity:** see *idem*.
- Pronunciation of Latin:** 229.
- Proper names:**
 declension of, 24, N.
 vocative and genitive of names in *-ius*, 193, Rem.
- puer:** declined, 192.
- Purpose Clauses:**
 introduced by *nē*, 179, Rule; by *ut*, 55, Rule.
 person and number in, 56, Rem. 1.
 subject of verb in, 56, Rem. 2.
 tense of subjunctive in, 56, N.
- que:** effect upon accent of word to which joined, 67, Rem.
- quī:** interrogative pronoun; see *quis*.
 relative pronoun, 201.
 accent of ablative of, cf. 122, Rem.
 agreement of, 122, Rule and Rem.
 beginning new sentence, 159.
 position in clause, 159, Rem.
- quidam:** declined, 201.
 use of, 144, N.
- quis:** declined, 201.
 use of, 153.

rapīō: conjugated, 208.

Reflexive Pronouns: 199 and N. 1;
see also **sui**.

Relative Pronoun: see **qui**.

rēs: declined, 194.

Second or Ē-Conjugation: 204.

Second or O-Declension: 192.

gender of nouns of, 36.

genitive case of, 193, Rem.

vocative case of, 41, 193, Rem.

sedeō: translation of the perfect
tense of, 27, Rem.

sōlus: declension of, 197, N.

Space or Time: accusative of Extent
of, 112, Rule; cf. 116, N.

Subject:

accusative case, 156, Rule, 147,
Rem. 1.

nominative case, 20; cf., 60, Rule,
74, N.

of **cum**-clauses; position of, 63,
Rem.

of purpose clauses, 56, Rem. 2.

Subjunctive Mood:

hortatory use, 99, Rule.

imperfect and pluperfect tenses
in **cum**-clauses, 63, Rule and N.

imperfect tense; form of, 99,
Rem. 2.

present and imperfect tenses in
purpose clauses, 55, Rule, 56,
N.

sui: declined, 199; cf. 155, Rem.

use of; in indirect discourse, 157,
N. 3.

sum: conjugated, 215.

imperfect tense; translation of, 79,
Rem.

with Predicate Adjectives and
Nouns, 45, Rule.

Summary of Forms: 192.

sunt: "there are," 20, Rem.; cf. 48,
Rem.

Syllables:

division of words into, 230.

length of, 230.

Synopsis of the Verb: 87.

Tense: defined, 16.

of the subjunctive in **cum**-clauses,
63, N.; in purpose clauses, 56, N.

Third Declension: gender of nouns
of, 95.

Consonant Stems: declined, 193.

I-Stems: declined, 193.

classes of, 105, N.

endings of, 105, Rem. 1; cf. 163,
N.

neuters; formation of, 105 and
Remarks, 194, Rem.

plural cases of certain words,
163, N.

See also **Adjectives**.

Third or Ē-Conjugation: 206.

ending of the present infinitive ac-
tive, 108, Rem.

verbs in -iō, 208; cf. 119.

Time and Space: Extent of, 112,
Rule.

timeō: translation of the perfect
tense of, 27, Rem.

tōtus: declension of, 197, N.

trānseō: derivation of, 111, Rem.

trēs: declined, 198.

tū: declined, 199.

accent of the ablative plural, 58,
Rem.

use of the nominative case, 60,
Rule.

ūllus: declension of, 197, N.

use of, 186, Rem.

ūnā (cum): 150, N.

ūnus: declined, 197.

urbs: declension of, 177, Rem.

ut: introducing purpose clauses, 55, Rule.

uter: declension of, 197, N.

vallēs: declined, 193.

vehō: use of, 42, Rem.

Verbs: 202.

agreement with subject, 20, Rule II.

deponent, 181, 212; cf. 182, Rem.

-iō verbs, 208; cf. 119.

irregular verbs, 215.

of going and sending; with domum, 80, Rem.

principal parts of, 89, 90, 182, Rem.

synopsis of, 87.

vir: declined, 192.

vis: declined, 194.

vocāns: declined, 196.

Vocative Case: 41.

of meus, 61, Rem.

of nouns of the second declension,

41, 193, Rem.

position of, in the sentence, 41, Rem.

vocō: conjugated, 202; see also **vo-**
cāns.

Voice: definition of, 16.

volō: conjugated, 216.

with infinitive, 81, 82, N.

Vowels: 230.

Word List: 223.

Levit Lepus Parvulus

1. *Levit Lepus parvulus diabolus
altis vocibus:*

2. *Neque in horto fui, neque obus
comedi*

3. *Longas aures habeo, breves
caudam teneo.*

4. *Lepus vides habeo magnum
saltum facio.*

5. *Domus mea sibilans est, lectus
meus durus est.*

11. *Quid feci hominibus, quod me
sequuntur canibus?*

Domine Deus
Speravi in te.
Cura me Iesu,
quoniam libera me,
in dura catena.
In manus tuas commendo
meum spiritum.
Domine Deus,
conquendo me,
Et glorificando me.
Adoro, imprecior,
Et libera me!

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

EDUCATION LIBRARY

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

7 DAY USE
SUMMER

DURING
SESSIONS

LD 21-50m-6,'60
(B1321s10)476

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

*... in illo
... gamma caelo.*

videte. Videte

videte. Videte

videte. Videte

Videte. Videte

Regem. Regem

Videte. Videte

"

"

"

" Domum.

Star

